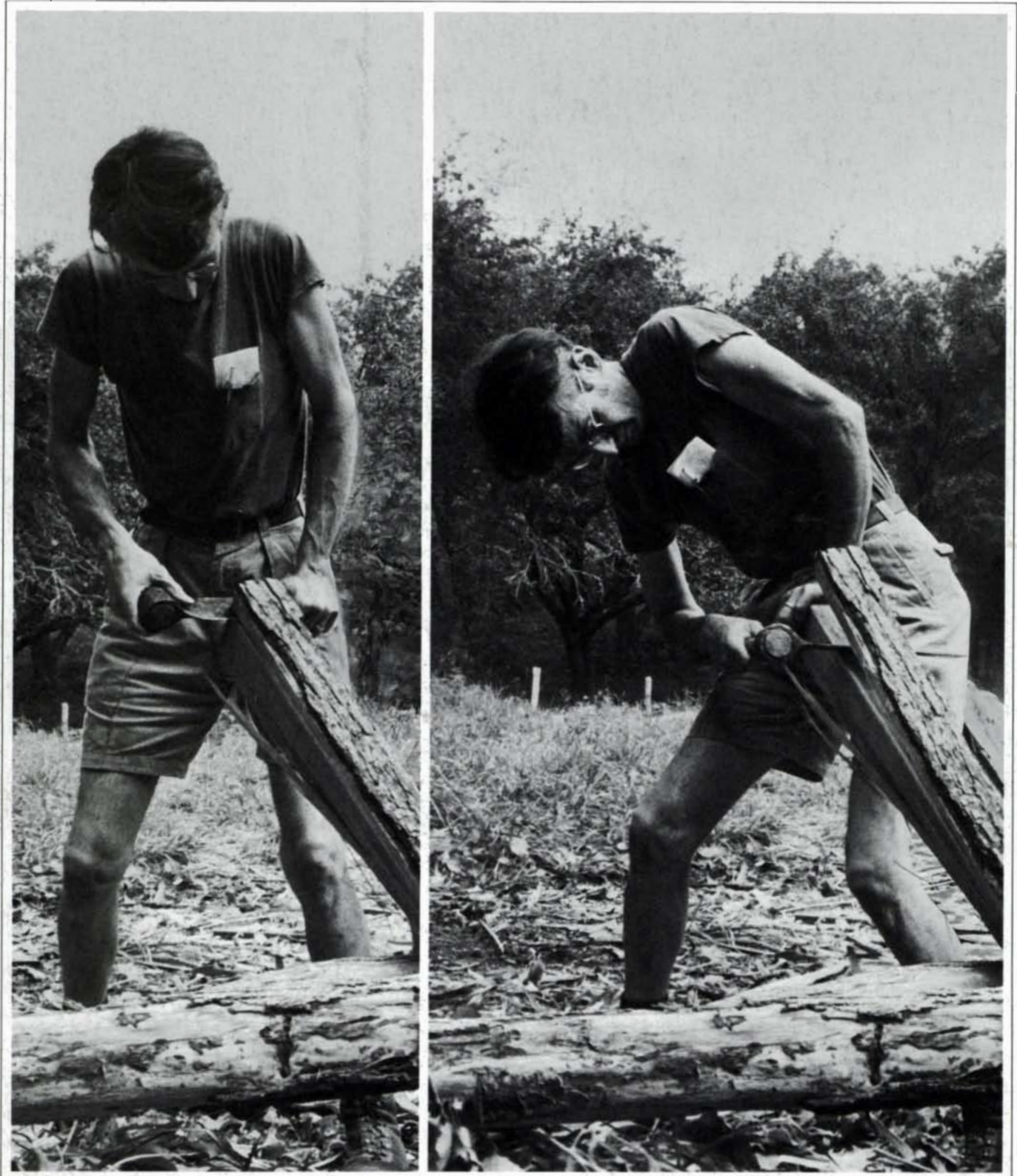


Fine Woodworking

MARCH/APRIL 1982, No. 33, \$3.00



Green Woodworking



0

A magazine for the carpenter in you... and the electrician... and the architect...

One day you're a carpenter hanging kitchen cabinets. The next, an electrician rewiring an old house. A few months from now, you'll be building that new addition you've been planning.

Whatever your homebuilding plans, you'll find the information you're looking for in *Fine Homebuilding*. It's written entirely by people who've done the work you want to do — carpenters, architects, electricians, solar specialists, adventurous homeowners.

A year's subscription is \$14. And if you're not happy with your first issue, we'll refund your money. To subscribe, use the order form in this issue. Or call toll-free, 1-800-243-7252, and charge your order. (In Connecticut, call 1-426-8171.)

Publishers of *Fine Woodworking*
The Taunton Press, 52 Church Hill Road, Box 355, Newtown, CT 06470

FINE HOMEBUILDING
TRUSS-BEAM CEILING • 19TH-CENTURY FRAMING • CLASSICAL PORCH • AIRPLANE HOUSE

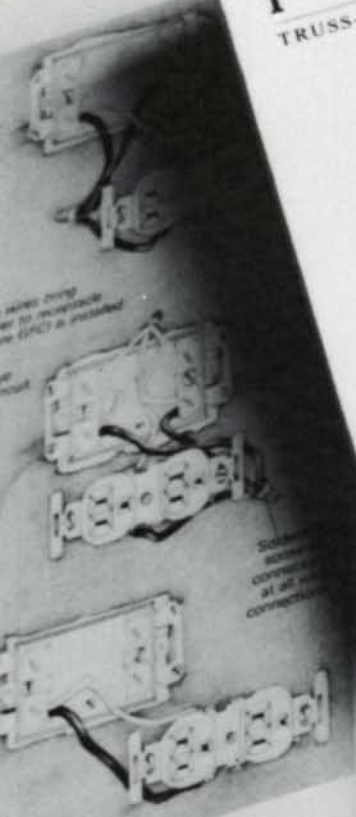
DECEMBER 1981/JANUARY 1982 No. 6 \$3.00



Wright's
-built, passiv
' in 1944 by
v's greatest

A. Hein

which
sing A
was
w



FINE WOODWORKING

Editor John Kelsey
Art Director Deborah Fillion
Associate Editor Rick Mastelli
Assistant Editors Paul Bertorelli
Roger Holmes
Copy Editor Jim Cummins
Art Assistant E. Marino III
Editorial Secretary Linda D. Whipkey

Contributing Editors Tage Frid
R. Bruce Hoadley
Richard Starr
Simon Watts

Consulting Editors George Frank
Ian J. Kirby
A. W. Marlow

Methods of Work Jim Richey



Cover: Dave Sawyer leans on a froe to size a blank for making into the leg of a post-and-rung chair. Wood ready to work can be split, rather than sawn, directly out of the log. Sawyer taught how to bust chairs out of green wood last summer at Country Workshops in Marshall, N. C. Above, he shows a student how to drawknife a rung. For more about how to work green wood, see p. 50.

THE TAUNTON PRESS

Paul Roman, publisher; Janice A. Roman, associate publisher; JoAnn Muir, director of administration; Karl Ackerman, direct sales coordinator; Lois Beck, business coordinator; Mary Galpin, production coordinator; Jon Miller, assistant to the publisher. Accounting: Irene Arfaras, manager; Madeline Colby, Elaine Yamin. Advertising Sales: Richard Mulligan, manager; Vivian Dorman and Carole Weckesser, coordinators. Art: Roger Barnes, executive art director; Jeanne Criscola, Kathryn Olsen. Books: Laura Cehanowicz Tringali, editor; Lee Hov, associate art director; Deborah Cannarella, editorial assistant. Fulfillment: Thomas P. Luxeder, manager; Carole E. Ando, subscription manager; JoAnn Canning, Gloria Carson, Dorothy Dreher, Mary Glazman, Marie Johnson, Denise Pascal, Cathy Sakolsky, Nancy Schoch, Catherine Sullivan, Terry Thomas; Robert Bruschi, mailroom supervisor; Marchelle Sperling, David Wass. Marketing: Jack F. Friedman, director; Ellen McGuire, sales manager; Kimberly Mithun, secretary, Kathy Springer; Production Services: Cynthia Lee Nyitray, manager; Annette Hilty, assistant; Nancy-Lou Zabriskie Knapp, typesetter; Gary Mancini, coordinator; Deborah Mason, assistant.

Fine Woodworking®

MARCH/APRIL 1982, NUMBER 33

DEPARTMENTS

4	Letters	36	Books
12	Methods of Work	42	Adventures in Woodworking
24	Questions & Answers	44	Events
34	Editor's Notebook		

ARTICLES

50	Green Woodworking by Rick Mastelli	
	How I split and shaved a chair at Country Workshops	
57	Tool Lovers Get Together by Stanley Wellborn	
	Dengelshtocks and witchets shine at PATINA	
58	Bittner's Old Tool Jamboree by Norman Vandal	
59	Designing for Machine Craft by Roger Holmes	
	Desmond Ryan's route to handsome boxes	
66	Backgammon Board by John Boyland	
	Solid wood and geometry instead of veneer	
68	The Appalachian Dulcimer by Billy F. Best	
	How Warren May makes traditional instruments	
71	Old Finishes by Robert D. Mussey	
	What put the shine on furniture's Golden Age	
76	The Scribed Joint by Morris J. Sheppard	
	Masking wood movement in molded frames	
78	Trussed Log Bridge by Monroe Robinson	
	Scribed joints for structural strength	
82	Woodlot Management by Irwin and Diane Post	
	Thinning and pruning for more valuable trees	
88	Air-Drying Lumber by Paul Bertorelli	
	Usable stock comes from a carefully stickered stack	
90	Shop-Built Panel Saw by William F. Nelson	
	Cutting plywood sheets down to size	
92	Twist Turning by Eric Schramm	
	Traditional method combines lathe and carving	
94	A Mechanical Twist	
95	A Portfolio of Spirals	
96	Vietnamese Planes by Curtis Erpelding	
	Cong Huy Vo turns scrap into tools	
98	Current Work by Rick Mastelli	
	Iowa harvests a show of contemporary fancy	
100	Mighty Fine Miter Box by John Marcoux	

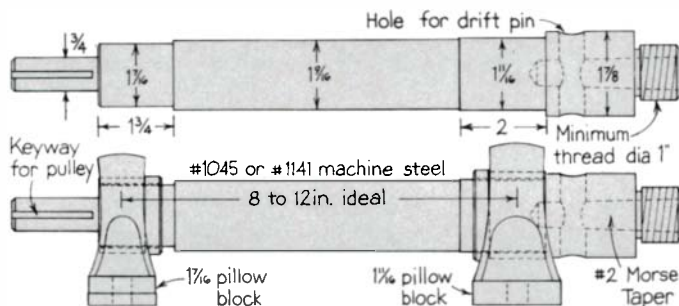
Fine Woodworking (ISSN 0361-3453) is published bimonthly, January, March, May, July, September and November, by The Taunton Press, Inc., Newtown, CT 06470. Telephone (203) 426-8171. Second-class postage paid at Newtown, CT 06470, and additional mailing offices. Copyright 1982 by The Taunton Press, Inc. No reproduction without permission of The Taunton Press, Inc. *Fine Woodworking*® is a registered trademark of The Taunton Press, Inc. Subscription rates: United States and possessions, \$14 for one year, \$26 for two years; Canada, \$17 for one year, \$32 for two years (in U.S. dollars, please); other countries, \$18 for one year, \$34 for two years (in U.S. dollars, please). Single copy, \$3.00. Single copies outside U.S. and possessions, \$4.00. Send to Subscription Dept., The Taunton Press, PO Box 355, Newtown, CT 06470. Address all correspondence to the appropriate department (Subscription, Editorial, or Advertising). The Taunton Press, 52 Church Hill Road, PO Box 355, Newtown, CT 06470. United States newsstand distribution by Eastern News Distributors, Inc., 111 Eighth Ave., New York, N.Y. 10011.

Postmaster: Send address changes to The Taunton Press, Inc., PO Box 355, Newtown, CT 06470

Letters

With regard to the headstock of Don Bjorkman's bowl-turning lathe in the Nov. issue of *Fine Woodworking* (#31), I feel obliged to offer a suggestion that should improve the quality of work produced on it. The two bearings as shown are widely spaced, and with a slender arbor of only an inch or so in diameter, this invites serious vibration problems. . . .

The accompanying sketch shows a simple but effective



spindle design. This design can be altered to suit many applications. The main points are that it offers a firm shoulder to seat against the front bearing, the spindle has plenty of beef to resist vibration, and the pulley location at the extreme left end allows easier belt management. This also removes the belt and pulley away from the left arm while turning the back of a bowl, but of course a guard should still be installed. I have shown a hole crossways the spindle to receive a tapered drift pin with which to remove tooling having Morse tapers. A #2 MT should be the minimum size because of the vibration problem. Incidentally, Bjorkman's motor mount should have a locking device to eliminate belt and motor bounce. —R. Perry Mercurio, Kingfield, Me.

Most of us have thrown together a skate-wheel coaster, a toy-box or a rocking horse for our own kids. Soft pine, nails, putty and a coat of paint usually did the job. Everything is different when you become a grandfather. First of all it is assumed and expected that you have nothing to do but turn out toys, games, puzzles and wagons for the new grandson or granddaughter. Second, the quality of the product must improve by several magnitudes. . . .

I have been a grandfather for two years. And it has been a most enjoyable challenge to turn out wooden games and toys for the grandson, using woods new to me like padauk, bubinga, putumuju and tulipwood. The ultimate joy happened



Glenn B. Ward Co.

last spring when I presented my grandson with a full-size operational hardwood runabout. . . . Grandchildren provide a constant and compelling urge to move from the office desk to the woodshop. —Herbert L. Eggleston Jr., Glendale, Calif.

. . . For the lathe tool-rest and tailstock hold-down bolts, it is very convenient if the nuts which receive these bolts are recessed and epoxied into the block which slides under the ways, rather than being loose. In this way, all adjustments, clamping, etc., can be done without the frustration of going up from below with a wrench. This is a minor point, but I find that reducing the frustration-coefficient on any machine, especially those which I make myself, is well worth the effort.

If possible, keep up the "make it yourself" articles on machinery; the satisfaction, as well as the monetary savings, is part of our hobby. —George H. Davis, Granby, Conn.

Am I the only woodworker who makes mistakes? I see article after article in your fine magazine on how to do everything right, but rarely if ever see any advice on what to do when something goes wrong. What's the best way to patch a chipped dovetail? What if you dent or chip or scratch a surface? Cut a tenon too small? I'm not talking about restoration hints, I mean rescue advice for mistakes made during construction.

No one starts out perfectly. I admire the work in your magazine but can hardly reproduce it. You don't get to be that good without making a lot of mistakes and learning tricks to correct at least some of them. What secrets are your contributors holding back? —John Goodman, Washington, D.C.

Since sources of supply are obviously important to any woodworker, I would like to share with your readers my experience with John Harra Wood & Supply Co.

During March of 1981, I ordered birch plywood, a marking gauge and a pair of safety goggles. The total order was \$172.67. Subsequently, I received the goggles (the price of which was \$2) and a copy of my order form indicating that the marking gauge and plywood had been back ordered. In May, I called to check on the status of the order and was told that the items were expected shortly and would be shipped promptly.

On August 1, since I had not received the goods, I wrote to John Harra, cancelled the order and requested a refund. On August 12, I had not received a reply to my letter, so I called and was advised the the order had been shipped before my letter had been received. Since I had not yet received the order, I assumed that the driver of the ox cart was still en route from New York to Pittsburgh and decided to wait another month to permit the journey to be completed. When I called Harra on September 11, I was advised that the order had never been shipped but that a refund check would be issued that day. Two weeks later, on September 24, when the promised refund did not arrive, I called again and was told that the order would be shipped on October 2, but that if I wanted a refund I could have the refund. My reply was that I didn't care which I received but that I wanted either the order or the refund.

As I am certain you have surmised by this time, I have not yet received the plywood, the marking gauge nor the refund. In effect, I have paid \$172 for a \$2 pair of safety goggles. . . .

—Michael R. Stabile, Jr., Carnegie, Pa.

EDITOR'S NOTE: When contacted by telephone on Jan. 7, Harra claimed he had shipped the plywood to reader Stabile around Sept. 11. He said he had not been able to supply the marking gauge, so had asked his accountant to refund its price. Harra said he was surprised to learn that Stabile had received neither the plywood nor the partial refund. He promised to refund the full \$170 forthwith. Asked why this order had languished from March until September, Harra

said, "So many papers get lost around here that we're currently changing over from a manual system to computers. We definitely have to improve our office flow."

Stabile's complaint is typical of the 30 we received about Harra's business during 1981, ten times the number lodged against any other advertiser. *Fine Woodworking* staff members took each complaint directly to Harra and as far as we know, he eventually made good on all of them. Against these complaints, Harra points to hundreds of happy customers, as well as to discount prices.

... Besides being a very keen amateur woodturner, I am also a member of the International Wood Collectors Society, and, combining the two interests, I am turning a collection of goblets from as many woods as I can obtain. I have seen reader enquiries about what woods to use for turning. My own experience is that all woods seem to be able to be turned successfully, although some are easier to work than others. The way to find out is to put some wood between centers and try it. So far I haven't found a timber that I have not been able to turn, having made egg cups and bud or specimen vases from very soft woods like balsa and also very hard woods such as lignum vitae and our Australian mulga. In addition, some of the timber not usually used commercially, such as fruitwoods and other ornamentals, makes beautiful items. I season some wood myself, obtaining it from various sources including the local council gardener, who has been only too happy to oblige, especially after being bribed with an eggcup or two.

—Neville Sanders, Gawler, Australia

Re methods of finishing redwood to retain its original color (*FWW* Jan. '82, Q&A). I have turned bowls from dry and very soft redwood burls that would turn black when any normal

finish was applied. I solved the problem by applying a wash of white glue (white glue thinned with about an equal part of water). Test on a scrap piece. The solution must have body but be thin enough to be completely absorbed by the wood, leaving no ridges or lumps. When thoroughly dry, this was lightly sanded, taking care not to expose untreated wood. This was followed with several coats of varnish using 0000 grade steel wool between coats to break the gloss and even the surface. The varnish doesn't penetrate the wood, thus does not affect the color. The white glue wash has no effect on the color and does harden the surface. Results are beautiful smooth objects showing all the natural wood grain and color.

—Jack Gardner, Anaheim, Calif.

Enclosed are photos of an entry table I recently completed. The dimensions are 74 in. by 16 in. by 32 in. Birch plies were bent over a hardwood frame and about 30 coats of black lac-



KIRBY STUDIOS

NORTH BENNINGTON . VERMONT . 05257
802-442-3119

- **FULL TIME PROGRAM**
FURNITURE MAKING AND DESIGN
- **SUMMER SCHOOL**
INTENSIVE ONE WEEK COURSES ON
WOODWORKING SKILLS • SEATING •
FRAME AND PANEL • TORSION BOX •
DRAWER AND CARCASE • VENEERING •
RESTORATION •
DRAWING FOR WOODWORKERS •
DESIGN FOR WOODWORKERS •
- **A WORKING STUDIO**
FURNITURE DESIGN AND PRODUCTION •
ARCHITECTURAL & INTERIOR DESIGN •
GRAPHIC DESIGN •

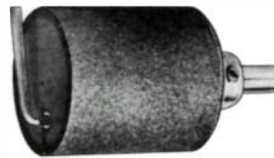
CALL OR WRITE FOR BROCHURE

Sleeveless DRUM SANDER

USE ON:
Drill Press
Small Motor
Lathe
Shopsmith
Radial Saw
1/4" Drill

NO PRE-MADE SLEEVES TO BUY

ECONOMICAL- Simply cut sandpaper from standard size sheets
UNIQUE way of holding sandpaper to drum. Twist of key tightens
SPONGE RUBBER backing insures long wear of sandpaper



1" x 3" long	\$13.50
2" x 3" long	\$14.50
2 1/2" x 3" long	\$15.25
3" x 3" long	\$16.50

1" and 2 1/4" ABOVE \$26.75
ABOVE 4 DRUMS \$53.50

3/4" x 3" long	\$14.50
2 1/2" x 4 1/2" long	\$21.00
3" x 4 1/2" long	\$22.50
2 1/2" x 6" long	\$25.50
3" x 6" long	\$27.50

ADD \$2.50 PER ORDER FOR SHIPPING
HUBS AVAILABLE:

1/4" Bore with 1/8" or 3/16" adapter
1/2" 20 RH Thread except 3/4" x 3"
3/4" Bore except 1/2" x 3" and 2" x 3"

Send Check or Money Order
MONEY BACK GUARANTEE

SINGLEY SPECIALTY CO. INC.

P.O. BOX 5087F
GREENSBORO, N.C. 27403

YOUR JOINTER BECOMES YOUR THICKNESS PLANNER WITH MAG-STRIPS™ ONLY \$9.50*

Your jointer becomes a precision thickness planer in seconds with magnetic MAG-STRIP™ guides that snap into place to guide and gauge the thickness of your jointer cut; remove instantly. State length of your infeed table when ordering. Money back guarantee. Patent pending.

1. Rabbet the edges of material to be planed. 2. Place magnetic MAG-STRIPS on jointer infeed table. 3. Plane to precision thickness.

*Up to 16" MAG-STRIPS \$9.50; 17" to 24" \$11; 25" to 32" \$13.50. Add \$1.50 for shipping.

ORDER DIRECT FROM: **Technova**
P.O. Box A356
Edwardsburg, MI 49112

ROCKWELL 100 ROUTER



SALE!

~~\$145.00~~

\$89.00

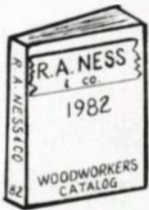
FREE DELIVERY

IL RESIDENTS ADD 6% SALES TAX

SEND NOW !!

FOR THE GIANT 1982 WOODWORKING CATALOG

IT IS A MUST FOR THE
PROFESSIONAL AND SERIOUS AMATEUR



\$5.00

REFUNDABLE
WITH
PURCHASE

CATALOG **FREE** WITH
ROUTER PURCHASE

R. A. NESS & CO.
5083 N. ELSTON AVE.
CHICAGO, IL 60630
(312)545-0131

Learn how the pros

Carve Realistic Feathers



..HOT TOOL!

15.95 Plus \$1.50 Postage
MA Resident add 3%
Dealer Inquiries Welcomed
send today for brochures

HOT TOOLS Inc.

P.O. Box 615-F • Marblehead, Mass. 01945-0915 • 617/631-7100

HORTON BRASSES

Nooks Hill Road, P.O. Box 120F
Cromwell, CT 06416
Tele: (203) 635-4400



Mfrs. of Cabinet and Furniture
Hardware for Homes and Antiques
Send \$2.00 for a Catalogue

ENGINEUTY

It's Engineering & Ingenuity All in One
Machinery and Machine Accessories
are Our Business - Our Only Business



ACCURATE PRECISION TABLE SAWS
FROM 10" TO 16"



STRAIGHT & SPIRAL KNIFE JOINTERS
FROM 8" TO 20"



FIXED & TILTING SPINDLE SHAPERS
MANUAL & AUTOMATIC



COMBINATION MACHINES & PLANERS
UP TO 24"



MANUAL & AUTOMATIC
SLOT MORTISERS & BORERS
FROM 1 TO 50 SPINDLES

**Plus Over Fifty Other Unique
High Quality Woodworking
Machine Tools**

Request a copy of our NEW free catalog
Please include \$1.00 to cover postage and handling

**ADVANTAGE
MACHINERY
COMPANY, INC.**



40 WHITES PATH, SOUTH YARMOUTH, MASS 02664

GET A COMPLETE LOGBOOK. FOR A BUCK.



Our logbook lists
dozens of books
that show you how
to build everything
from birdhouses to
barns.

In it, you'll also
find a list of kiln-
dried, cabinet-
grade Appalachian hardwoods.

Plus a supply of hard-to-find
veneers and turnings.

Remember we guarantee each
board foot we ship.

Please send your logbook. I enclose a
dollar, which you'll refund with my first min-
imum order.

Name _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

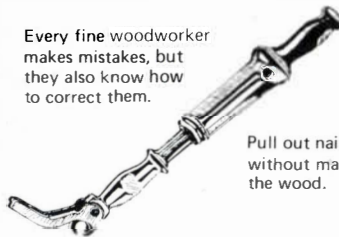
**EDUCATIONAL LUMBER
COMPANY, INC.**

P.O. Box 5373 FW, 21 Meadow Road
Asheville, N.C. 28803

WOODBUTCHER

Shelter Institute Bldg.
38 Center Street
Bath, Maine 04530
207-442-7939

Every fine woodworker
makes mistakes, but
they also know how
to correct them.



Pull out nails
without marring
the wood.

Send \$2.00 for our special catalog and price list.

THE MAGNIFICENT MALLETS



- 14-oz ... \$5.00
- 18-oz ... \$6.30
- 24-oz ... \$6.60
- 32-oz ... \$6.90

+ \$2.25 Pstge.

**Top Quality • Extra Durable • One-Piece
Lignum Vitae Carver's Mallet**

Liberal discount to Schools and Dealers.
FREE 24-P. German steel tool catalog - write:

FRANK MITTERMEIER, INC.
IMPORTERS OF FINE TOOLS SINCE 1936

Dept. FW-3, 3577 E. Tremont Avenue
Bronx, New York 10465

quer were applied. After lacquering, rosewood was inset and brass was inlaid. . . . I have been working with wood for 35 years and still find it to be the most rewarding work I have done.
—Dennis Fingold, Ojai, Calif.

After the fact, verbatim from a woodworker's journal:

Woke up with making up for yesterday's mistakes on my mind—decided on a procedure, went ahead with its execution with dust mask and ear guards and plastic goggles that obscured more than protected my vision. I was cutting a piece too small from another piece not big enough, on a table saw not lit well enough, with blades not sharp enough.

Later, after the helpful plastic surgeon reconstructed my middle and index fingers on my left hand, I decided I've been pushing my luck and myself too hard. Deadlines and dilemmas *can* wait. Back to the basics.
—R.S. Labrise, Howard Beach, N.Y.

In your January/February issue (#32), I was appalled by the item in Methods of Work (p. 14) that suggested using a radial-arm saw as a jointer. A radial-arm saw was designed for cross-cutting lumber. Used for any other operation it is dangerous at best. The method you published assumed far too much. To achieve the "perfect" setup required to perform this operation with even a modicum of safety almost necessitates the use of a jointer in the first place to get long and straight stock material. While I understand that most of your readers would know to use a push stick to perform the operation, as a shop teacher I feel it is never wise to assume anything where safety is concerned. Have we forgotten the function of the hand plane?
—W. Keith Thompson, Bridgeport, Conn.

HOMAGE TO THE BELT SANDER

The handplanes of old are gathering dust,
They sit on the shelf, beginning to rust;
More and more belts for my sanders I crave,
So I sold all the scrapers, drawknives and spokeshave.

My mask, my scarf, my goggles, I don,
My outfit with earplugs and gloves I put on.
I bow three times to 220 three-phase,
On Aluminum Oxide I happily gaze.


Soon to be screened from the world outside—
Norton, Behr-Manning, my patrons, my guide;
Cable and Porter, Decker and Black,
Silicon Carbide—none do I lack.

Once I begin the only sensations
Will be the dust cloud and the thrilling vibrations.
I pick up a sander, the cord I plug in,
I advance to the altar, my work to begin.

With reverent pause, I turn on the switch
And submit to the roar and the sounds that bewitch.
Abrasion, vibration, my only sensations
My art I pursue of instant creations.

The corner, the flat, the roughness—they call;
All to be conquered—form above all!
Form follows function, the function divine
Of me and belt sander; we grind and refine.

—William Post Ross, Georgetown, Me.



Swedish Carving Knives

Carvers need blades that keep really sharp edges but are flexible. Hard steel, necessary for a keen edge is brittle. The Swedish blades are a lamination of high carbon Mora steel (R62) between softer, more shock absorbing steel for durability. They come very sharp, ready to whittle. Blade lengths: 3-1/4", 3-3/4"
TWO PIECE SET \$7.95

Send \$1 for 3 year Catalog subscription
Free with Order

PRINCETON

P.O. Box 276-2, Princeton, MA 01541

Please send _____ Carving Knife Sets
NO. 2517A (Set of 2) **\$7.95**

Please add \$1.75 shipping and handling

I enclose \$1 for a 3 year Catalog
subscription (Free with Order)

Name _____

Address _____

City _____

State _____ Zip _____

For the largest
inventory in the East
of woodworking
machinery & supplies
Powermatic, Rockwell,
Makita, Dremel
and Benchmark
call, write or visit


**American Machinery
& Motor Co., Inc.**
22—24—26 Howard St.
New York, N.Y. 10013
Telephone (212) 226-4577



**SANDVIK
SCRAPER #475**
As recommended in "Tage Frid Teaches
Woodworking—Shaping, Veneering, Finishing"

Available in quality tool departments at a store near you.
Write for the name of your nearby dealer.

Robert Larson Company, Inc.
Agents • Importers • Wholesalers
1007 De Haro Street, San Francisco, CA 94107
(415) 821-1021 • Dealer Inquiries Invited



KANT TWIST™
MADE IN USA

SWIVEL JAWS
OPEN TO 4½"
ONE FACE "V" GROOVED
1700 LB.
CLAMPING PRESSURE

Model 415

**MOST LIKELY THE BEST
GENERAL PURPOSE
CLAMP YOU CAN OWN**

* Unique design eliminates twist-
ing produced by "C" clamps
* Throat depth 2¼" to 3"

\$1350
PPD.

Other styles of KANT-TWIST clamps available,
send \$1.00 for catalog, refundable with pur-
chase. Money back guarantee. Wisc. residents
add 4% tax.

THE ROCKLEDGE CO., INC.
Box 56 Dept. N1 Milwaukee, WI 53201

Program in Artisanry

for the education of professional artist-craftsmen



Alphonse Mattia, faculty, mirror

ceramics

fiber

metal

wood furniture

wooden stringed instruments

For our brochure write to:
Program in Artisanry, Dept. FW
Boston University
620 Commonwealth Ave
Boston, MA 02215
or call 617/353-2022

Boston University is an
equal opportunity institution

Bachelor of Applied Arts, Associate of Applied Arts, and
Certificate of Mastery (graduate level) as well as summer
and evening courses

200 WOODWORKING PLANS

for home
workshop
or schools

A treasury of plans for every home workshop, school, library. 19 series of individually printed, easy-read drawings for novice to advanced craftsman, each with 10 or more complete plans.

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Colonial Series | 10. Wall Accessories |
| 2. Early American | 11. Wall Furniture |
| 3. Gun Cabinets | 12. Miniature Chests |
| 4. Spice Cabinets | 13. Wall & Shelf Clocks |
| 5. Wall Shelves | 14. Contemporary Series |
| 6. Grab Bag (15 plans) | 15. Old Salem Series |
| 7. Cape Cod Series | 16. Garden Projects |
| 8. Modern Series | 17. Shaker Furniture |
| 9. Outdoor Projects | 18. Country Kitchen |
| | 19. This 'n That (15 plans) |

FULL SET (200 plans) \$19.50 or select desired series. 1 series (10 plans) \$3, 4 series (40 plans) \$7. Price includes postage and handling. Catalog 50¢ or free with order. Money-back guarantee. Send to COLONIAL WORKSHOP, P.O. Box 41032, Sacramento, CA 95841.

COME BY AND SEE OUR SELECTIONS
OF QUALITY HARDWOODS AND FINE HAND TOOLS
POWER TOOLS BY- INCA • VEGA • LAMELLO • MAKITA
SAWBLADES BY FREUD
CALL OR WRITE FOR SPECIAL PRICES
ON MAKITA STATIONARY TOOLS
SEMINAR INFORMATION AVAILABLE ON REQUEST
CALL OR WRITE TODAY
1936 RECORD CROSSING DALLAS, TX 75235 (214) 631-5478



Build This "All Wooden" Clock

Complete plans for this 100% wooden clock. All working parts fully visible. No special tools required. Separate

hour, minute and second hand, weight driven, keeps perfect time. May be mounted in large grandfather case or displayed on pedestal. For the woodwork hobbyist or clock enthusiast. Plans only, \$6. R. D. Thomas, 1412 Drumcliffe Rd., Winston-Salem, N.C. 27103.

CONTEMPORARY WOODWORKER

A NEW magazine dedicated to the contemporary artist in wood. For sample copy send \$4.00, or \$12.00, for subscription to:
CONTEMPORARY WOODWORKER
P.O. BOX 10859D
ROCHESTER, N.Y. 14618

Bowls Tom Lacagnina

5 in 1 WOODWORKING MACHINE

(SHOPSMITH TYPE)

SAVE \$251. Today

Special offer good thru the 30th of the month.
ONLY \$999.
CALL NOW!!!
(1-800) 421-2467
TOLL FREE INFORMATION IN CALIF.
CALL COLLECT (213) 549-0761

VERY IMPORTANT
The only machine built with:

- A. ALL CAST IRON TABLES
- B. HEAVY DUTY DESIGN
- C. 2 H.P. ELECTRIC MOTOR
- D. BUILT AS AN INDUSTRIAL MACHINE

MASTER WOODCRAFT CO.
800 SPRUCE LAKE DRIVE • P.O. BOX 669
HARBOR CITY, CA 90710

MAIL NOW!

Shown as a
Vertical
Drill Press

Dealership
Available

YOUR NAME _____
ADDRESS _____
CITY _____ STATE _____ ZIP _____
PHONE () _____
CHARGE TO MY VISA MASTERCARD AM EXP MY CHECK OR MONEY ORDER IS ENCLOSED
ACCOUNT NO _____ EXP DATE _____

FREE SANDING BELTS

DIRECT FROM THE MANUFACTURER
(Manufactured at 642 North Eighth Street, Reading, Pa.)

With your order of one dozen or more belts, we will send you six FREE. All belts are aluminum oxide first quality. Our electronic presses make smooth bump-free splices.

Check your size and how many dozen. We will ship assorted grits unless otherwise specified.

- 1" x 30" - \$11.75/doz.
- 1" x 42" - 11.80/doz.
- 1" x 44" - 11.85/doz.
- 3" x 18" - 12.75/doz.
- 3" x 21" - 13.25/doz.
- 3" x 23 3/4" - 13.70/doz.
- 3" x 24" - 13.75/doz.
- 3" x 27" - 14.25/doz.
- 4" x 21 3/4" - 15.75/doz.
- 4" x 24" - 16.25/doz.
- 4" x 36" - 19.95/doz.
- 6" x 48" - 21.90/1/2 doz. (3 FREE)

9" x 11" Paper Sheets
(100 sheets per package)

- 40-D - \$28/pkg.
- 50-D - 25/pkg.
- 60-D - 23/pkg.
- 80-D - 20/pkg.
- 100-C - 18/pkg.
- 120-C - 18/pkg.
- 150-C - 18/pkg.

A/O Finishing Paper

- 180-A - \$15/pkg.
- 220-A - 15/pkg.
- 280-A - 15/pkg.

Wet or Dry S/C Paper

- 220-A - \$22/pkg.
- 320-A - 22/pkg.
- 400-A - 22/pkg.
- 600-A - 22/pkg.

Other size belts on request.

Prompt delivery from stock.
MONEY-BACK GUARANTEE.

Add \$2.50 per doz. ordered for shipping and handling—PA residents add 6% sales tax.

- Check or Money Order.
- Master Charge VISA Exp. Date _____

Acct. # _____

Name _____

Address _____

City, State & Zip _____

INDUSTRIAL ABRASIVES CO.
644 North Eighth Street
Reading, PA 19603

DIRECT IMPORTERS OF EXOTIC WOODS

Rosewoods Ebonies
Cocobolo Zebra
Bubinga Padauk
Koa Bocote
Teak Purpleheart
Morado Shedua

Italian Olive

(Additional Species Available)

Logs, lumber, sawn veneer, and musical instrument components.

Some domestic species also available in sawn veneer and free form.

Wholesale inquiries only.

For more information contact:

The Sawmill

THE CF MARTIN ORGANISATION
P.O. Box 329
Nazareth, Pennsylvania 18064
215-759-2837

FULL-SIZE FURNITURE PLAN TO BUILD THIS EXQUISITE SLANT FRONT DESK WITH OPTIONAL SECRETARY BOOKCASE TOP



An elegant project for the experienced woodworker. Build this and you will own a treasured masterpiece that will add grace and elegance to any room in your home. Desk alone is 36" x 20-1/2" x 40-3/4" high. Slant front folds out for a writing surface over four graduated drawers. Five small drawers in pigeon hole assembly include two vertical column drawers. Desk Plan #167-\$11.00

Enhance the desk with a matching bookcase 11-5/8" deep x 38-1/4" wide x 44-1/4" high. Broken pediment top adds a classic touch. Three shelves behind glass doors. The complete ensemble is spectacular in either walnut or mahogany. Bookcase Plan #169-\$10.00

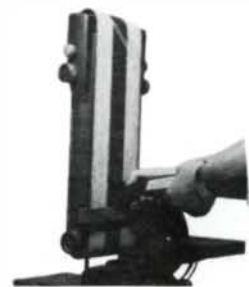
ORDER BOTH PLANS—\$20.00
(Catalog included with plan order.)

FURNITURE DESIGNS, Dept. KO-32
1425 Sherman Ave., Evanston, Ill. 60201

CATALOG OF FULL-SIZE PLANS \$2.00

Over 170 different, full-size professional plans. Early American, English, Mediterranean, Spanish, Danish, Modern. Chairs, hutches, tables, scores more. Your remittance refunded with first order. No woodworking shop is complete without it.

Nu-Life Abrasive Belt Cleaner



- Increases the cutting life of abrasive belts and discs up to 400%
- Increases efficiency in production
- Increases quality of finish
- Increases profits

To order one introductory offer cleaner, send your check for \$5.98 together with your name and shipping address to:

ABRASIVE SERVICE CO., INC.
P.O. Box 126
Unionville, CT 06085

Money back if not satisfied. We will supply you the name of your nearest distributor for subsequent orders.

— Serving Abrasive Belt Cleaning Needs Since 1960 —

NEW!



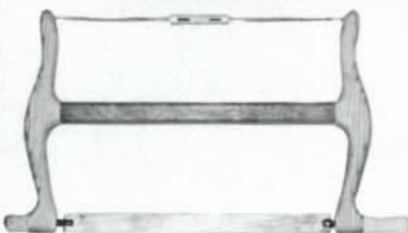
Deep Penetrating

with urethane added for extra durability.



hand oiled ash and walnut
20" BOWSAW

machined brass turnbuckle



20" BOWSAW \$59.95 ppd.

replacement blade \$7. ppd.

send one dollar for literature

Hoover Tool Works, Inc.
125 Beech Avenue
Tiverton, Rhode Island 02878

send check or m.o. allow 4-6 wks.

401-624-6476

Satisfaction Guaranteed

CUT IT—FRAME IT with HIRSH MITER MAKER and FRAME CLAMP

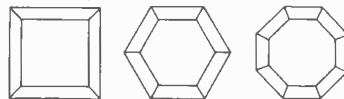
Accepts most circular saws from 7" to 8 1/2" (saw not included)



MITER MAKER
makes perfect miter cuts with your portable circular saw

- Portable—set on work bench, counter, etc.
- Has 2 independent aluminum fences
 - Makes precise straight cuts
 - Makes precision miter cuts to any degree on the calibrated scales

Get fast, accurate, tight-fitting miter cuts using your circular saw. Just set aluminum fences to any angle, 90° to 45°; hold work piece against the fence, lower saw and cut. Molded structural gray base. Easily assembled. 9"H x 21"W x 16"D. Saw not included.

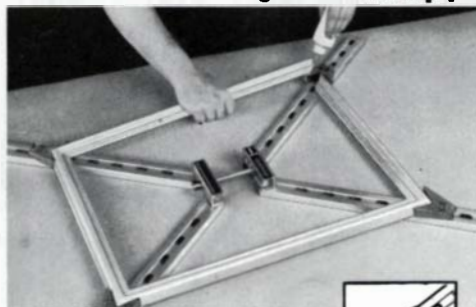


MAKES ALL THESE MITER CUTS:
frames for pictures, windows, doors; decorative cabinet moldings; hexagons; octagons; straight cuts.

**Miter Maker
Model TMM1**

\$39⁹⁵

FRAME CLAMP—glue and clamp perfect frames every time



SELF-SQUARING—clamps 4 corners at one time—just turn the wing nut on center bolt

EASY TO SET-UP! Glue and clamp perfect frames each time. Turn one wing nut on threaded bolt in center, all 4 corners tighten evenly, at one time. Rugged extruded aluminum rails. Molded jaws fit into slots, adjust to frame size you need. Folded size: 4"W x 1 3/4"H x 43 1/2"L. Easy to assemble with a screwdriver and pliers.



Jaws are reversible—for large or narrow frames



Adjusts from 5"x7" to 26"x30" & larger frames

**Frame Clamp \$15⁹⁵
Model TPC1**

BUY BOTH AND SAVE \$11.95—ONLY \$44⁹⁵

U.S. and foreign patents applied for. Made in U.S.A.

ORDER TODAY by Phone . . . or Mail Coupon!

CALL TOLL-FREE
800-621-5800
Illinois residents Call
800-972-5858
24 hours a day
7 days a week!

Available in Continental U.S.A. only

Professional Workshop Products

Dept. FW3 8051 Central Park Ave., Skokie, IL 60076

Please rush the following Hirsh products. My satisfaction fully guaranteed or I may return in 15 days for refund.

Qty.

TMM1. Miter Maker. \$39.95 + \$4.00 shipping & handling.

TPC1. Frame Clamp. \$15.95 + \$2.00 shipping & handling.

Save \$11.95. Buy both units above. \$44.95 + \$5.00 shipping and handling. (Illinois residents add appropriate sales tax.)

Check or money order enclosed for \$ _____ (No C.O.D.'s)

Charge to my: Visa MasterCard American Express

Card # _____ Expiration Date _____

Name _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

Signature _____ Telephone _____

SAVE! BUY BOTH!

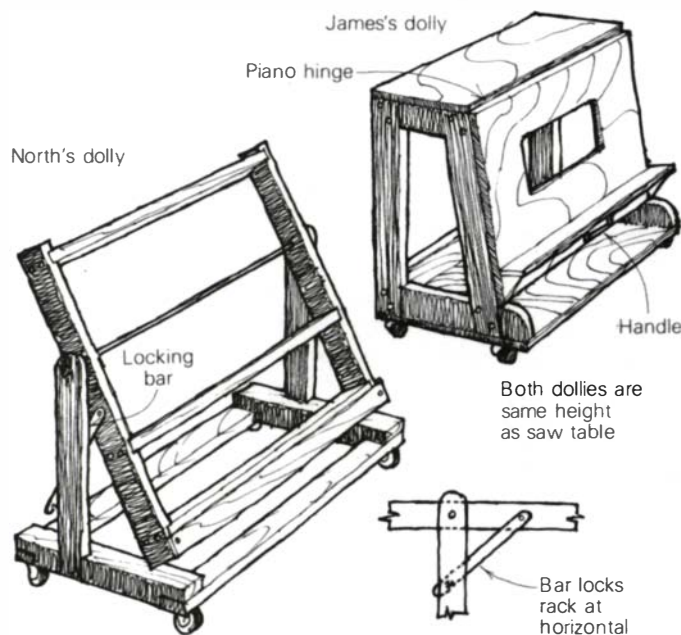
Two plywood dollies

Struggling with sheets of plywood is a real strain on my back, so I built this plywood dolly that makes handling those sheets easy. When I bring plywood to my shop in my pickup truck, I wheel the dolly up to the back of the truck with the cradle locked in the horizontal position. Then I slide the plywood from the truck onto the dolly with the long edge of the sheet resting against the foot. To tilt the cradle for transporting I just tap the locking bar with my foot to allow the cradle to swing to the vertical position. The cradle, when loaded with plywood, is almost evenly balanced but with a little more weight on the side with the foot. That way the cradle always tips the right way. When I wheel the plywood up to the saw, I tilt the cradle back to the horizontal position where the locking bar falls into a notch and locks. Since the dolly is the same height as my saw I can feed the plywood directly into the saw from the dolly.

—R.W. North, Burbank, Calif.

I've used the dolly sketched below right for years to handle large, heavy panels. I use it to tilt the panels up to the top of my table saw and unload panels from my truck. It also serves as a roll-around stepladder and a portable work surface.

—Ben James, Jacksonville, Fla.



Improved spade bit

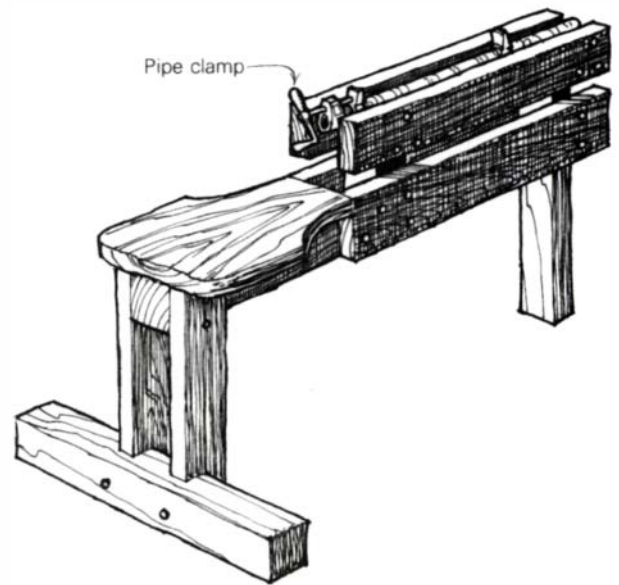
You can improve the performance of the common spade bit by regrinding it to the shape below. The reground bit will cut a smoother hole and won't tear out the grain as much when it comes out the other side.

—Ray Yobe, Altoona, Pa.



Pipe-clamp shave horse

At the summer camp where I work we introduced high school kids to the kind of woodworking that might have been done by Michigan settlers before electricity; each student made a mallet. First he split out an oak handle with a froe, then shaped it with a drawknife on a shaving horse. Next he worked on the mallet head. We soon realized that, while the shaving horse worked well for the long handles, the short heads were tricky to hold and work in the horse. To solve the problem I



designed and built an alternative to the traditional shaving horse that uses a pipe clamp to hold the work.

The horse's frame is made from 2x4s, 2x6s and 4x4s bolted together. To fasten the pipe to the frame I drilled two holes through the pipe to take a 3/8-in. threaded rod. Each threaded rod has four nuts, one on each side of the pipe and one on each side of the horizontal top member of the frame. I countersunk the outside nuts so there is no danger of striking them with the drawknife.

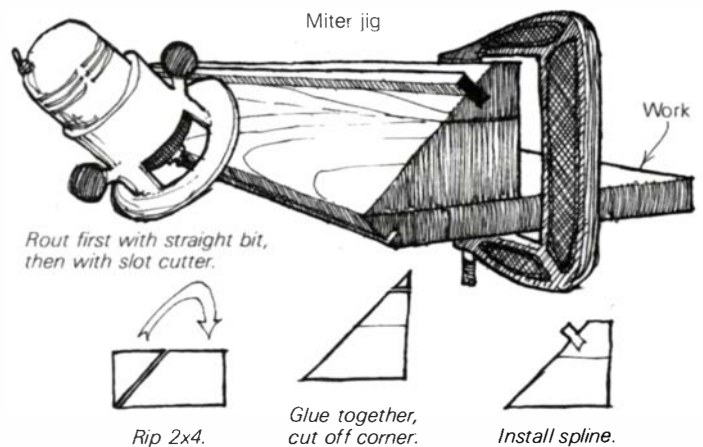
—Mark Lankton-Lenzo, Saugatuck, Mich.

Routed miter joint

I recently had to make two 24-in. long splined 45° miter joints to join a coffee-table top to its sides. Since the tabletop was too large for me to use my table saw, I devised a way to cut miters and spline grooves with my router and a simple homemade jig.

To make the jig, select a 2x4 slightly longer than the required joint and, using a carbide-tipped blade for smoothness, rip the board at 45°. Glue and screw the smaller piece to the main piece to extend the face of the jig, as shown in the sketch. Rip a 1/4-in. groove a little less than 3 in. from the pointed edge of the jig and install a spline in the groove. The spline serves as a straight-edged guide for the router's base.

To use the jig, rough-cut the workpiece at 45°, leaving it about 1/8 in. long. Position the jig exactly on the cut line and



clamp in place. Chuck a double-fluted carbide straight bit in your router and feed the router along the jig slowly and carefully. The ends are especially delicate. After the mitering cut is complete, leave the jig in position, chuck a slot cutter in the router and rout the spline slot. For a blind spline just stop the cutter an inch or so from the end. Repeat the process on the

Excellence in Woodworking—Los Angeles

THE FIRST WEST COAST SHOW FOR AMATEUR AND PROFESSIONAL WOODWORKERS...AND SMALL WOODWORKING SHOPS

MAY 14-16 LOS ANGELES CONVENTION CENTER

THE LATEST TOOLS AND SUPPLIES

Come and see the newest and finest woodworking machinery in the world, demonstrated by experts... examine a wide selection of hand and power tools... compare samples of choice woods, exotic veneers and hundreds of other supplies. This is a "must" show for amateur and professional woodworkers... and for small woodworking shops!

- Hand and power machines
- Wood shop accessories
- Abrasive and adhesives
- Finishing products
- Wood turning equipment
- Special purpose tools
- Woods and veneers
- Publications



EXAMPLES OF FINE WOODWORKING TECHNIQUES

Selected works by expert craftsmen will be displayed during the show. This is your chance to see... touch... and learn from examples of the finest techniques and materials being used in woodworking.



MEET WITH MASTER CRAFTSMEN

Plans are being made for a gathering of prominent woodworkers in a special section at the show. This is a golden opportunity to meet and talk with these mastercraftsmen. Details to be announced.



3 WOODWORKING SEMINARS... A Rare Learning Experience

Directed by Ian Kirby

Don't miss this unusual opportunity to hear and talk with these three outstanding experts in woodworking. Each man is a giant in his special area of expertise... having lectured extensively, authored articles and books, and presented workshops throughout America. Their talks will blend their understanding and knowledge with the practical application of their topic. Presentations will be supplemented by slides. Question and Answer sessions will be held after each seminar.



SEMINAR I: Friday, 9-12 noon

R. Bruce Hoadley, Ph.D., Professor of Wood Science & Technology, U. of Massachusetts. One of America's foremost Wood Technologists, Wood carver, author and lecturer. Contributing editor to *Fine Woodworking*.

Moisture and wood: A review of wood technology... the nature and structure of wood as a material... the how and why of drying wood... the practical effect of moisture in wood... designing to account for dimensional changes as a result of moisture.

SEMINAR II: Saturday, 9-12 noon

James Krenov, Cabinet maker, lecturer and author. Teacher of woodworking at The College of the Redwoods, Mendocino, California.

Working in wood... the disciplines and the satisfactions: James Krenov will talk about the way he approaches the designing of furniture... developing joinery details... assembly and finishing techniques... reflections of a craftsman, a teacher and international traveler.

SEMINAR III: Sunday, 9-12 noon

Ian Kirby, Furniture designer and maker, author and educator. Consulting Editor to *Fine Woodworking*. Director of Kirby Studios, a working studio and school of furniture design and furniture making, North Bennington, Vermont.

A unified design/craft approach to woodworking: Designing furniture with solid wood and man-made materials... working with and designing for modern materials and traditional materials... an historic perspective of furniture making from the turn of the century to the present... and a look into the future.

\$5.00 ADMISSION* GOOD FOR ALL 3 DAYS

Friday: 12-9 pm Saturday: 12-8 pm Sunday: 12-6 pm
*plus state and local taxes, where applicable.

Excellence in Woodworking Now Coast to Coast:

Los Angeles: May 14-16, Los Angeles Convention Center.
New York City: September 24-26, Madison Square Garden.
Chicago: November 12-14, Hyatt Regency Downtown.

For tickets and information, write or call: Marvin Park & Associates,
600 Talcott Road, Park Ridge, IL 60068 (312) 823-2151

RETURN COUPON FOR SEMINAR RESERVATIONS... LIMITED SEATING

Seminar ticket includes show admission... a \$5.00 saving!

CHECK SEMINAR:

SEMINAR I SEMINAR II SEMINAR III
No. of tickets No. of tickets No. of tickets

My check is enclosed for all 3 Seminars @ \$100 per person \$ _____

My check is enclosed for Seminars checked @ \$40 per Seminar, per person \$ _____

Name _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____ Phone _____

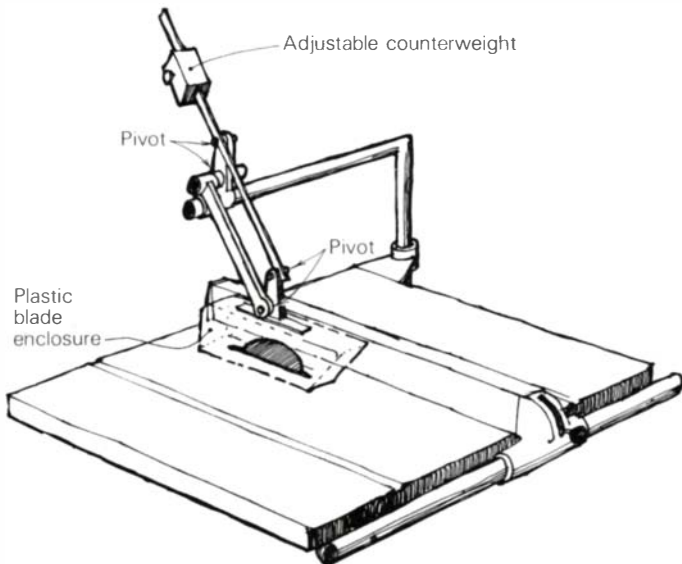
Return to: Marvin Park & Assoc., 600 Talcott Rd., Park Ridge, IL 60068, 312/823-2151

matching 45° piece. If the jig is made accurately, you'll be amazed how perfectly the joint will turn out.

—Paul Darnell, Phoenix, Ariz.

Space-age saw guard

This table-saw guard, developed for cutting space-shuttle insulation, holds several advantages over conventional guards. Because it is counterbalanced, the guard makes lighter contact and is easier to operate, especially with thick materials. By sliding the counterweight up or down the arm, the operator can adjust the downward force of the clear plastic en-



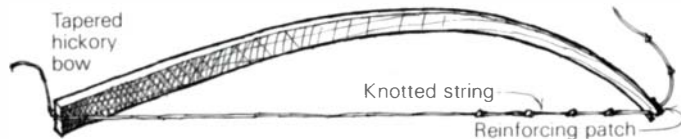
closure. The guard doesn't preclude dadoing and grooving operations, which are impossible with some other types of guards. The design was developed by Benjamin R. Dunn and Paul P. Zebus of Rockwell International.

—NASA Tech Briefs, Johnson Space Center, Tex.

Adjustable curve

To make this adjustable curve, start with a piece of fine, straightgrained hardwood—hickory is best. Cut a ¼-in. thick strip about 36 in. long and 1½ in. wide. Now taper the strip to ¾ in. wide and ¾ in. thick at one end. Glue a reinforcing patch on the thin end and saw a small notch in each end of the piece. To complete the curve tie a series of knots in a string and string up the curve like a bow. Unstring the curve when it's not in use.

—Floyd Lien, Aptos, Calif.



Edge gluing without clamps

Here's how I edge-glug boards using wide masking tape rather than clamps. First be sure your boards mate perfectly; the finished joint is no better than the initial fit. Now with the boards on a flat bench top, pull the joint together and run a strip of tape down the joint, spanning the crack with the tape. Turn the boards over, pull the boards to the edge of the bench and let one board drop a wee bit. Put glue in the open crack and flex the boards like a hinge until the joint is covered with a layer of glue. Slip the boards back on the bench, pull the joint

Objective: Make the Rockwell Unisaw® the last word in versatility and capacity.

- * Unique Uniguard for maximum protection even during dado operations.
- Available extra-long guide bars for ripping to the center of a 100" panel.
- New Sliding Table Attachment for big panel saw capacity.
- Exclusive Jet-Lock Micro-Set® rip fence for automatic alignment, one-control locking front and rear.
- T-slot miter gage for sure support, even beyond table front.
- Large table - 27" x 36" accurately ground for precision work.

Rockwell Unisaw #34-761 with 1½ H.P. motor and control List-\$1624.00 Sale-\$1395.00

Rockwell Unisaw #34-763 with 3 H.P. motor and control List-\$1861.00 Sale-\$1695.00

Sliding table #34-485 List-\$663.00 Sale-\$585.00

* Uniguard not included F.O.B. Birmingham, Michigan (Limited quantity available)

Glenn Wing
POWER TOOLS
1437 S. Woodward Ave.
Birmingham, Michigan 48011
(313) 644-5440

Write for a Rockwell catalog on Portable and Stationary Tools. Enclose \$200 for postage of our complete catalog at \$500 including postage.

Rockwell • Stanley • Bosch • Milwaukee • Makita

An intensive full-time learning situation emphasizing traditional technique as well as modern methods of woodworking.

Individual level instruction, ample work areas and an industrially furnished machine room provide a stimulating and efficient learning situation for the serious woodworking student of limited experience. Bench spaces are available throughout the school year. For further information write or call:

PRIMROSE CENTER
for
Fine Woodworking and Furniture Design
401 West Railroad St. Missoula, Montana 59801
Phone - (406) 728-5911

CABINETMAKER!!

Are you listed in the **DIRECTORY OF AMERICAN CABINETMAKERS?**

It's for all cabinetmakers, and especially those who work in 18th Century American Furniture repair, restoration, or reproductions.

There is no charge... Send your name, address, phone number, and up to one 8½ x 11 page of information about you and your work (methods, experience, philosophy, repair work, reproductions' period, specialties, etc.), by July 1 to:

DIRECTORY OF AMERICAN CABINETMAKERS
1377 K Street, Suite 538
Washington, DC 20005



UNDERSTANDING ORIGINAL HARDWARE

The William and Mary Period
(1680-1720)

Brass was almost a precious metal before 1770. Brass founders in the colonies were few in number; therefore, almost all the hardware was imported from England during this period. The hardware that was available, was small in size, and used sparingly. All the brass parts (backplate, drop, bail, post, and nut) were cast. Most of the earliest pieces were finished only where they would show. To embellish an otherwise plain pull, they were chisel chased by hand. Hand chisel-chasing is the art of creating a complete design through repeated hammer blows struck using many specially shaped steel chisels. Chisel-chasing indents the metal, unlike engraving, which removes it.

Our current catalog (mailed for \$4.00) illustrates 16 fine quality reproductions from the William and Mary period.

BALL AND BALL

463 West Lincoln Highway
Exton, Pa. 19341 • (215) 363-7330



HOUSE OF TEAK

The boldest inventory in America of kiln-dried hardwood lumber from all over the world—ranging from domestic Ash to exotic Zebrawood. Wholesale inquiries only. Chester B. Stem, Inc., 2708 Grant Line Road, New Albany, Ind. 47150.

OF SPECIAL INTEREST

- Now available: the whitest wood. One-inch-thick Holly lumber.
- Nice inventory of one- and two-inch-thick Partridgewood. Rich orange-brownish coloring.
- New addition: 2½-inch-thick Wenge lumber. Very dark brown color.



EARLY SPRING HANDTOOL SPECIALS

WHETHER WORKING WITH WOOD IS YOUR TRADE OR HOBBY, W.S. JENKS HAS MANY GREAT BUYS. NOW YOU CAN SAVE UP TO 33% ON THE FINEST DOMESTIC AND IMPORTED HANDTOOLS DURING THESE EARLY SPRING SPECIALS.



RECORD 010 BENCH REBATE PLANE

Ideal for general rebating work where a heavy section is being cut.
Reg. \$80.65

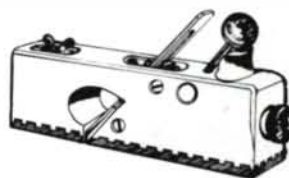
Now Only \$59.95

PRIMUS 711 IMPROVED SMOOTHING PLANE

The finest in wood planes with the exclusive Primus adjusting mechanism and adjustable lignum vitae throat.

Reg. \$87.95

Now Only \$71.95



PRIMUS 710P REBATE PLANE

With Primus adjusting mechanism and lignum vitae sole. Reg. \$79.95

Now Only \$63.95

JORGENSEN ADJUSTABLE HAND SCREWS

Cheaper BUY the ½ dozen.

	One - Five	Six and Over
0	\$11.97	\$10.69
1	\$13.68	\$12.22
2	\$15.70	\$14.02



MARPLES M60 12 PIECE CARVING SET

Includes ¼" skew; ⅛", ¼", ⅜", ½", 2½" gouges; ½ sq. chisel; ⅛" short bent chisel; ¼" long bent chisel; 1/16" veiner; ¼" V parting tool.
Reg. \$142.15

Now Only \$109.95

MARPLES M260 5 PIECE SCULPTURES SET

Includes 1" fan tail gouge; ⅜", ½" straight gouges; ⅜" bent gouge; ⅜" skew chisel.
Reg. \$80.15



Now Only \$64.95

From the professional craftsman to the home hobbyist, it's W.S. Jenks & Son for the largest selection of hardware, hand and power tools and machinery . . . never sacrificing quality for price.

Write for a W.S. Jenks & Son Spring Specials Catalog. Please enclose 50¢ for postage and handling. Sale prices apply while quantities last. Call 202-737-7490 for shipping information.




Retail/Mail Order Sales
738 Seventh St., N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20001
202-737-7490

Industrial Sales
2024 West Virginia Ave., N.E.
Washington, D.C. 20002
202-529-6020

Telex 89-2667

FOR THE LUTHIER · CRAFTSPERSON

FINEST PRIMUS PLANE



80 PAGE CATALOG · HANDBOOK
\$3 & \$1 POSTAGE (FREE BROCHURE)

**the LUTHIER'S
MERCANTILE**

P.O. BOX 7740 • HEALDSBURG, CA 95844 • U.S.A.
412 MOORE LN. (707) 433-1823

Banjo Plans & Kits
Full-size Blueprint \$6.50 postpaid



For free catalog of banjo & mandolin kits & components, call us toll-free:
1-800-848-2273 In Ohio call 614-592-3021

STEWART-MACDONALD
BOX 900F ATHENS, OHIO 45701



FURNITURE HARDWARE
LAMP PARTS
CHAIR CANE

Paxton B-4 Catalog \$1.50

UPPER FALLS, MD. 21156

RIPSTRATE™ SAVES FINGERS

RIPSTRATE · clamps to the fence of table & radial arm saws and guides the work tight along the fence while it is pushed through with a stick. *No hands near blade! No adjustment required. Also prevents kickbacks!*

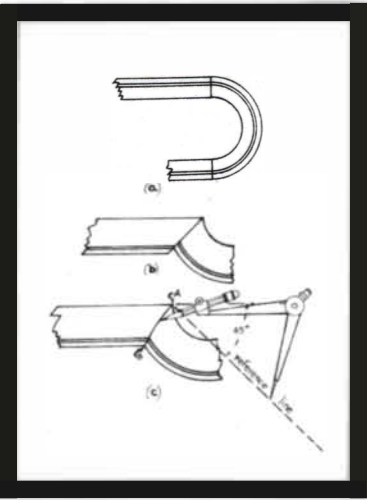
RIPSTRATE is not just a safety device. Professional shops use it because it gives straighter cuts and speeds the work. Money back guarantee. \$49.50 plus \$3 shipping. Check, Visa, M/C. Free brochure.

FISHER HILL PRODUCTS



1 Fisher Hill
Fitzwilliam NH
03447
603 585 6883

**INCH-SCALE
SPOKEN HERE**



Miniatures craftsmen across the globe know that small scale projects demand full-size skills. And a lot of these craftsmen have learned the inch-scale language from:

THE SCALE CABINETMAKER

TSC is published quarterly. 1 yr., \$15.00; 2 yrs., \$29.00; sample issue, \$4.25. Order from Dorsett Publications, Inc., P.O. Box 87F, Pembroke, VA 24136.

**FREE
COLOR CATALOG**

**Build Your Own
Grandfather Clock
Prices Starting Under
\$255**

(including movement and dial)

- Do-it-yourself case kit, parts pre-cut
- Finished clocks
- Solid 3/4" hardwoods: black walnut, cherry, oak
- Heirloom quality
- Factory direct prices
- Solid brass West German chiming movements
- Money back guarantee
- Prompt shipment



MASTERCARD and VISA ACCEPTED

**EMPEROR®
CLOCK COMPANY**
WORLD'S LARGEST MANUFACTURER OF GRANDFATHER CLOCKS
Dept. 247 Emperor Industrial Park
Fairhope, Alabama 36532

The first truly affordable tool of its kind!



**NEW!
3 IN 1**

Comes complete with motor & stand ... ready to use!

**POWER-FEED
PLANER
MOLDER
JOINTER**

Put this versatile power tool to work in your own shop. See how fast it *pays for itself!* Quickly converts low-cost, rough lumber into valuable finished stock. Turns out perfect quarter-round, casing, base mold, tongue & groove ... all popular patterns ... any custom design. Commercial-size jointer produces super-true edges, squared stock, bevels, chamfers.

Saves You Money ... Makes You Money!

Start your own high-profit business selling trim, all types of trim and millwork to lumberyards, carpenters, contractors, do-it-yourselfers. Use it to make grandfather clocks, gun cabinets, paneling, flooring, furniture ... almost any home or farm building project.

Nothing Extra to Buy!

Comes complete with 115 V. motor, switch, stand, knives, full instructions ... ready to use. *Out performs* other combination tools at over twice its low price. Easy terms.

30-Day FREE Trial!

Send For Complete Facts! MAIL COUPON TODAY or

Call Toll-Free 1(800) 227-1617, Ext. 489
In California call 1(800) 772-3545, Ext. 489

Woodmaster Power Tools, Inc., Dept. PE12
2849 Terrace, Kansas City, Mo. 64108

INFORMATION KIT ... FREE!

PLANER FACTS & PROFITS

No Obligation ...
No Salesman Will Call

Woodmaster Power Tools
Dept. PE12
2849 Terrace
Kansas City, MO 64108

YES! Please rush me, free and without obligation, your Complete Information Kit on the new **PLANER/MOLDER/JOINTER** plus facts on Woodmaster's 30-Day FREE TRIAL Money-Back Guarantee.

Name _____
Address _____
City _____
State _____ Zip _____

rubber cement to both the scrap board and the smooth side of the 1/8-in. thick slice. Press the two pieces together after the cement has dried. With the scrap as a base you can hold the work securely for planing to final thickness. To remove the veneer, insert a putty knife between veneer and scrap; then slide it along the scrap. Rub the veneer with a rough cloth to remove the remaining rubber cement.

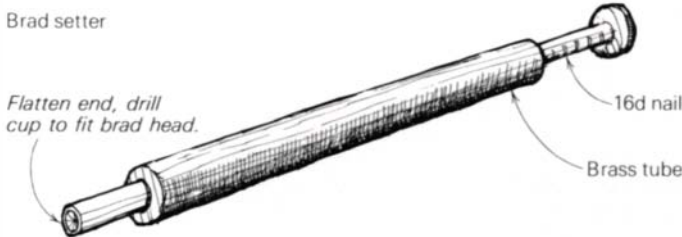
—Alan U. Seybolt, Harwich, Mass.

Here's how I safely smooth resawn veneer on the jointer. I secure the veneer to a flat back-up board with double-stick carpet tape. The back-up board holds the veneer flat and gives it the stiffness it needs. If the veneer is short or narrow I tape scraps of the same thickness to the back-up board to keep it from tipping. Set the jointer for a light cut and proceed slowly.

—Rock Thompson, Centerville, Utah

Brad-setting tool for tight places

Here is a simple tool to set brads or escutcheon pins in tight places. It consists of a 16d nail and a 3-in. brass tube that slides over the nail. Grind the point of the nail flat, dimple the end with a center punch, then drill a small cup with a no. 32 drill

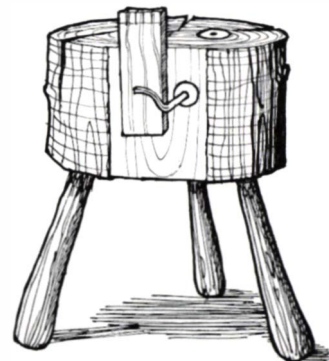


bit. To use, set the brad in its pilot hole, drop the tube over the brad to the work surface and tap the brad home with a small hammer.

—Malcolm Murless, Staunton, Va.

Outdoor workbench

I needed a small outdoor bench for fair-weather work outside my shop and demonstrations at the county fair. To make the bench I cut a beefy slice of oak tree and mounted it on three legs canted outward. For the "vise," I fitted the bench with holes for my cast-iron hold-down (available from Woodcraft Supply, 313 Montvale Ave., Woburn, Mass. 01888, and other suppliers). I bored a 2-in. hole into the top of the bench clear through to the bottom (so rainwater wouldn't collect in the hole). Then I plugged the top 2 in. of the hole with hardwood and centerbored the plug to fit the hold-down shaft. I flattened a place on the side of the oak slice and fitted a plug as above so I could use the hold-down to clamp work vertically. The arrangement works surprisingly well.



—J.B. Small, Newville, Pa.

Maintaining sharp carving tools

I ran across this tool-sharpening trick on a trip to Mexico. There I watched a carver working on mahogany chairs frequently plunge his gouge into a pine bowl full of some waxy sub-

GENERAL

Canada's Finest Woodworking Machinery

Canada's current dollar position makes the General line of woodworking machinery the best value on the market today.



8" JOINTER

64" Extra long table. Precision engineered. solid cast iron construction and many other quality features... making it the ideal choice for craftsmen and cabinet shops.

General's full line includes jointers, Planers, Thickness Planers, Band Saws, Table Saws and Lathes. Send \$2.00 (refunded against purchase) for complete information and prices on all machines. You won't be disappointed.

J. Philip Humfrey, Ltd.

3241 Kennedy Road, Scarborough, Ontario M1V 2J9 Canada - (416) 293-8624

Summer '82 Workshops Appalachian Center for Crafts

June 7-18, Bruce Beeken, Steambending; July 5-16, James Schriber, Woodworking for Beginners; July 19-30, Michael Hurwitz, Intermediate & Advanced Woodworking; August 2-13, Judy McKie, Basic Furniture Design; August 16-27, Tommy Hill, Canoe Building.



Chair, Michael Hurwitz

For information contact Bill Rummel, Appalachian Center for Crafts, Rt. 3, Smithville, Tennessee 37166 (615) 597-6801

FROM LOG TO LUMBER WITH LOVE

Selling unusual hardwoods is my business. As a craftsman, I select my lumber for its special character and beautiful color and figure. My unusual selection includes exotic and domestic lumber, bookmatched flitches, burls, sawn veneers, carving stock, and quartersawn lumber. Because of the unique quality of my wood, I offer personalized service from log to lumber. Call or write, and I'll be happy to tell you more.

(215) 775-0400
Box 303, RD 3
Mohnton, PA 19540



Affordable Luxury

the WET STONE machine



Whether considered a luxury or a necessity, you need sharp keen cutting edges on all your knives and tools. With this machine you can wet sharpen, grind, hone, shape and flatten while protecting your fine tempered steel. Eliminates burning and heavy burring.

30 day MONEY BACK GUARANTEE

Brodrick's Tool and Hobby catalog

Brodrick's
Dept 511
4560 East 71st St
Cleveland, Ohio 44105

ORDER TOLL FREE
800-321-6730
(in Ohio: 800-362-8915)

Please send my WET STONE machine.
 Enclosed is check or money order \$82 postage paid.
 Charge my Visa Master Card \$ _____
 Card # _____ exp _____
 MC Bank # _____
 NAME _____
 ADDRESS _____
 CITY _____
 STATE/ZIP _____
 Please send FREE Color Catalog

**MOST COMPLETE SELECTION
IN CONNECTICUT**
25 SPECIES OF
HARDWOOD · HARDWOOD PLYWOOD
VENEERS · MARINE LUMBER

GENERAL WOODCRAFT
100 C. BLINMAN STREET NEW LONDON, CONN 06320 203-442-5301

THE WORCESTER CRAFT CENTER
Professional Craft Studies*

- WOOD • FIBERS
- CLAY • METAL

*a 2 year program for career-oriented craft students
call or write for a descriptive brochure

25 SAGAMORE ROAD
WORCESTER MASSACHUSETTS 01605
(617) 753-8183

WOOD SCREW SPECIALS
100 #8x 1 1/4 Flat Head Wood Screws—Phillips—\$1.99
1000 #8x 1 1/4 Flat Head Wood Screws—Phillips—\$14.99
Fastener Catalog \$1.00. FREE with order. VISA and MasterCard accepted.
Send check or money order plus \$2.50 for shipping to

THE NUTTY COMPANY, INC.
135 Main Street, Dept. FW32
Derby, Conn. 06418-1996

WOODCARVERS WHITTLERS
7 DESIGNS IN EASY-CARVING JELUTONG

Pre-cut and marked wood blanks with a scale model in each kit. Mallets, Tools.
Send stamp for FREE Brochure!
WOOD IS GOOD CO., DEPT. F
BOX 46, COULTERVILLE, CA 95311

POLYETHYLENE GLYCOL
The new wood stabilizer and chemical seasoning agent.
Make crack-free table tops from log cross sections and flawless bowls and carvings from green scrap wood. \$1.00 for catalog.

The Crane Creek Company
Box 5553 F
Madison, Wisconsin 53705

TABLE STROKE SANDER
4 Models \$585.00 — \$685.00 BALL BEARING
Deluxe (Less Motor) \$750.00 — \$900.00

Sand 38" x 6" & 8"
Sidestroke & String Sanders Available, Kits \$40 to \$420.
© McCall House, Box 1950-N
Lenoir, N.C. 28645 704-758-1991

Over 70 Different
HARDWOODS
FOR WOOD CARVING & HOBBY CRAFTS
From Afrormosia to Zebra Wood

Kaymar Wood Products, Inc.
4603 35th S.W. Seattle, Wa. 98126
206-932-3584

WOOD TOYS Plans Parts Wheels
Armor Products Catalog \$1.50
Box 290 Deer Park, NY 11729 Dept. S

WOODWORKERS—SLIDE materials off YOUR shop tools onto OUR wide rollers for safety, accuracy, and convenience

SUPPORTABLE SUPPORTABLE SUPPORTABLE

For Info. Send \$1 to: Turning Point Mfg, Inc. RR-4A Davenport, N.D. 58021



Mortimer Schwartz
Mortimer Schwartz, President
Fine Tool Shops Inc.

45% OFF

My favorite wood drill bits... and they're yours for an incredible \$9.95

It's a 14 piece set. 7 professional quality drill bits and 7 matching stop collars. Advertised everywhere for \$17.95

You won't find these in hardware stores. These are *brad point* wood drill bits. With brad points, you make the holes exactly where you want with no "jumping" or "walking". Each bit has two cutting spurs with extremely sharp flutes. You get router clean holes every time with none of the splintering that happens with ordinary metal drill bits.

No serious pro would drill without a stop collar when precise depth is important. In doweling, for instance. This stop collar set comes fitted with slotted locking screws for exact no-slip drilling of clean unsplintered holes.

Drill bit sizes are 1/8", 3/16", 1/4", 5/16", 3/8", 7/16" and 1/2". Use for all 1/4" chucks.

This offer ends March 15, 1982 so please act now.

FREE BONUS
Free with each order, a 132 page full color catalog of the world's finest tools. Regularly \$5.00.



20 Backus Ave.
Danbury, CT 06810
Dept. G2

FREE \$5.00 Catalog with order

YES, please send me your 14 piece wood drill bit and stop collar set. If I'm not perfectly satisfied, I understand I can get a complete refund by returning my order within thirty days.

Check or money order enclosed. (Include \$1.50 for shipping and handling) *
Charge my VISA AMEX MasterCard Diners.

Signature _____

Account No. _____ Exp. Date _____

No, I'm not ordering. But please send me your 132 page full color Fine Tool Catalog for which I enclose, (charge or check). \$5.00 to be refunded with my first order.

Name _____

Address _____

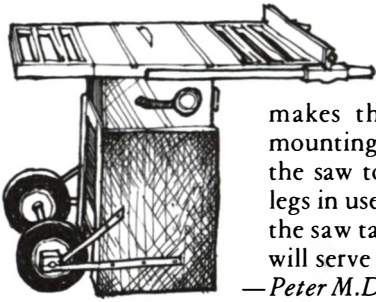
City _____ State _____ Zip _____

*Connecticut residents must include sales tax

stance. Upon inquiry he said the bowl contained a mixture of beeswax and fine carborundum abrasive powder. The plunging kept a keen edge on his sharpened carving tools. When I returned home I tried the trick and found it to work fine—especially on a warm day or near a stove so the wax stays soft.

To make the concoction, warm up ½-lb. of beeswax and knead in two or three tablespoons of 400-grit or 600-grit carborundum powder. The grit is available at any lapidary shop. To protect your carving tools, keep the mixture in a softwood box or bowl.
—Jim Thomas, Cerrillos, N.M.

Portable table saw



I have fitted wheels to my table saw, as shown in the sketch at left.

The arrangement makes the saw portable (without mounting it on a dolly), but allows the saw to sit on its own four stable legs in use. You can fit handles under the saw table, or extended fence rails will serve the same purpose.

—Peter M.D. Darbishire, Hensall, Ont.

Magnetic pipe-clamp pads

The best pipe-clamp pads I've seen were made by facing hardboard with sticky-back magnetic tape. The hardboard is hard enough to resist deforming yet soft enough to not mark softer woods like walnut and mahogany. The magnetic tape holds the pads in place better than a third hand, yet the pads are easily removed. Magnetic tape (I used 3M Plastiform brand)

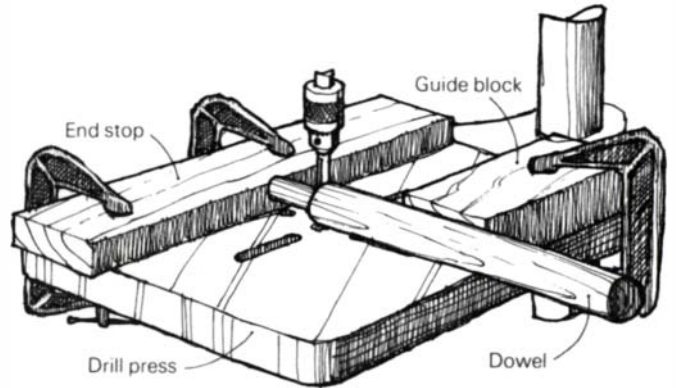
can be obtained locally at sign shops and some hardware stores, or it can be mail-ordered from Woodcraft Supply, 313 Montvale Ave., Woburn, Mass. 01888.

—Mike Graetz, Lakeland, Minn.

Reducing the diameter of dowels

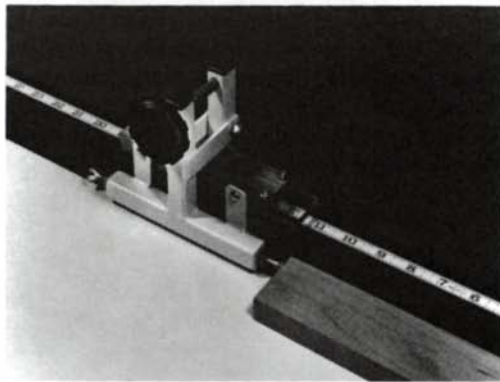
The sketch below shows an old patternmaker's trick to reduce the diameter of a dowel. Simply chuck a router bit in a drill press and clamp down a couple of scrap blocks to guide the dowel and to serve as a length stop. Lower the quill to take a light cut, lock the quill in place and rotate the dowel under the bit. Continue taking light cuts until you're at the desired diameter.

—Wallace C. Auger, Fairfield, Conn.



Methods of Work buys readers' tips, jigs and tricks. Send details, sketches (we'll redraw them) and photos to Methods, Fine Woodworking, Box 355, Newtown, Conn. 06470.

A new tool that saves you time, and improves cutting accuracy.



T-Square™ Cut-Off Saw Stop

FAST. Forget C-clamps and hand-held tape measurements. A quick twist of the wrist is all it takes to set the stop for precise cuts.

ACCURATE. The hair-line pointer aligns with a stick-down tape to produce extremely accurate cuts every time.

LOW COST. For \$54, plus shipping costs, you can have a superior system to those costing much more. The T-Square™ Cut-Off Saw Stop will pay for itself.

GUARANTEED. Try one for two weeks. If not satisfied, return for full refund. Parts and workmanship guaranteed for one year.



MANUFACTURING CORPORATION
216 S. Alma School Rd. Suite 3
Mesa, Arizona 85202
(602) 835-9300



Write for the name of the dealer nearest you.
DEALER INQUIRIES INVITED



College of the Redwoods

One-year program in
Fine Cabinetmaking
with James Krenov

Applications accepted from
April 1 to May 1 for 1982-83 program
beginning in September 1982

For further information:
Program Coordinator, Woodworking
College of the Redwoods
Mendocino Coast Educational Center
444 North Main Street
Fort Bragg, CA 95437
(707) 964-5613

• TEAK • EBONY • MILLWORK • DRY KILN FACILITY • BASSWOOD •

• POPLAR • OAK • MAPLE • ASH • MAHOGANY

PADOUK • BIRCH • CHERRY • WALNUT



YUKON LUMBER CO.

520 W. 22nd St. • Norfolk, Virginia 23517 • (804) 625-7131

COCOBOLO • BUBINGA • PURPLEHEART • ROSEWOOD • WENGE •



AMERICAN FURNITURE — 1620 TO THE PRESENT.

By Jonathan L. Fairbanks and Elizabeth Bidwell Bates. The first complete illustrated presentation of American furniture published in over 50 years. Beautiful sharp photographs and color plates depict more than 1200 pieces on 560 pages. Detailed running text and captions establish the social and historical context for each piece.

Regular \$50.00.

Limited Special **\$39.95** POSTPAID.

JAPANESE WATERSTONES



Set of 2
\$24.50
POSTPAID.

Manufactured by fusing extremely sharp abrasives together under high temperatures, Japanese waterstones cut faster and produce a razor edge impossible to obtain with oil stones. Set of two stones consists of a 1200 grit coarse stone for establishing a sharp bevel and a finish stone for final honing and polishing of the edge. Coarse stone is 2 1/2" x 8" x 1 3/8". Finish stone is 2 1/2" x 7 1/4" x 1/2".

Makita

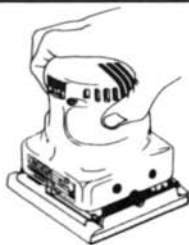
BLADE SHARPENER Model 9820-2



Model 9820-2 **\$195.00** POSTPAID

Sharpens jointer and planer knives up to 16" long. With accessory jig, accurately sharpens plane irons and chisels. Medium grit Japanese waterstone rotates in gravity-fed water bath for safe work on your edge tools. One year limited warranty.

ACCESSORY JIG for chisels and plane irons \$10.00 Postpaid.



Makita FINISHING SANDER Model BO4510

One-hand palm grip design. Flush sands into corners. Powerful 1.8 amps. 115 volts. 12,000 orbits per minute. One year limited warranty. 2.4 lbs. 4" x 4 3/8".

\$49.95 POSTPAID

Makita PLUNGE ROUTER Model 3600B



This powerful 2 3/4 HP plunge router is designed for maximum ease of operation. It can be plunged to your pre-set dimensions (up to 2 3/8") and locked into place without letting go of the handle. Two adjustable depth stops allow removal of stock in successive passes. Holds 1/4", 3/8", and 1/2" router bits. Heavy duty 5 1/4" x 6 3/8" rectangular base accepts optional guides. Weighs 11 lbs.

\$209.00 POSTPAID.

Set of optional guides for 3600B: Guide holder, straight guide, and roller guide \$20.00 Postpaid.

Makita CORDLESS DRILL

Convenient powerful 3/8" cordless drill is excellent for drilling pilot holes and driving screws into wood or sheet metal. Drills up to 200 3/8" holes through one inch hardwood on a single charge. 7.2 volt nickel-cadmium battery recharges completely in one hour. Battery and 110 volt charger are included. Optional spare battery permits continuous operation. 600 RPM, reversible. Drill with battery weighs 2.4 lbs.



Model 6010DW
\$99.00
POSTPAID.

Spare battery \$32.00 ppd.

Makita BANDSAW Model 2116



ACCURATELY AND POWERFULLY RESAWS BOARDS UP TO 12 3/8" WIDE. Depth of throat 13". Wheel size 16". Height of machine 52". Weight 297 lbs. Blade width 3/4" up to 2 3/8". Motor 2 HP. Industrial type machine priced for the small professional shop or serious amateur.

Makita THICKNESS PLANER Model 2040



15 1/2" automatic feed thickness planer. 7 3/8" maximum thickness capacity. 2 HP 115 volt motor. Weighs 254 lbs.

Makita PLANER-JOINTER Model 2030



12" automatic feed thickness planer, 6" jointer with 59" long bed. 2 HP 115 volt motor. Weighs 275 lbs.

Makita WOOD SURFACER



High speed automatic feed stationary knivesurfacer removes a thin shaving the width and length of a board leaving a superb smooth surface. Maximum width is 9 3/4". Feed rate is 180 feet per minute. Weighs 276 lbs.

Model LP2501

We ship Makita tools freight prepaid in the 48 adjacent States. Our large Makita inventory permits rapid delivery. Postpaid offers are good in the U.S. through 4-30-82. To order, send check, money order, or Mastercard/Visa info to:

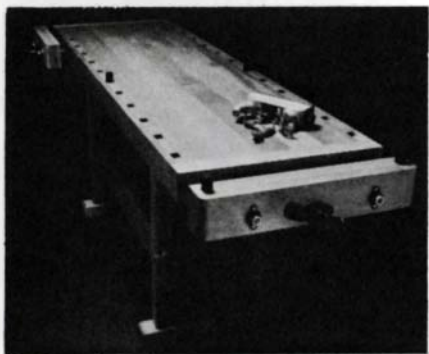
HIGHLAND HARDWARE

1034 N. HIGHLAND AVE., N.E., DEPT. 33F
ATLANTA, GEORGIA 30306 (404) 872-4466

Send \$1.00 for our 48 page 1982 catalog which features Makita tools along with hundreds of other tools including products by Record, Marples, Tyzack, Jorgenson, Freud, and Lamello. Catalog included free with order.

NEW FINE WORKBENCH KIT!

Now, at last—a classic craftsman's bench that costs you less because you build it yourself!



The Old World workbench was one of the proud labors of apprenticeship. For today's woodcrafter a fine workbench is still an indispensable personal tool. The Cutting Edge Workbench Kit, designed with the best features of European-style benches may be assembled in a day or weekend.

Features:

- Mortise and tenon construction of solid Hardrock Maple.
- Largest working surface of any European-style workbench, over 13 sq. ft.
- An incredible 6' 10" maximum clamping capacity between bench dogs (holds a standard door!) width 24", weight 220 lbs.
- Solid steel guide rods (not tubes) with honed steel bushings on vises.

- Turned vise handles and bench dogs are of select exotic hardwoods.
- Step by step illustrated assembly manual.
- Custom height/length available.

BERKELEY, CA 94710, 1836 Fourth St., 415/548-6011
Mon-Sat 10am-6pm, Sun 11pm-4pm
LOS ANGELES, CA 90066, 3871 Grand View Blvd., 213/390-9723
Mon-Sat 10am-6pm, Sun 11am-4pm
SAN DIEGO, CA 92126, 7626 Miramar Rd., #3500, 714/695-3990
Tues-Sat 10am-6pm



CALL OR WRITE FOR FREE DESCRIPTIVE BROCHURE

“Ever thought of drying your own lumber?”



Even if it's as little as 100 board feet or as much as 3600, Ebac has a machine that is simple to operate and economical to run. The Ebac Mini and Minor lumber dehumidifiers will give you exactly the kind of lumber quality you want while they pay for themselves with the savings in buying green lumber. A simple dial setting is all that is needed for precise seasoning of different kinds of lumber. No noise. No mess. No fuss. Hundreds of these units are now in use in England.

Phone or write for more info:
Ebac of America
1715 North Sherman Drive
Indianapolis, IN 46218
(317) 356-0673



POWER TOOL SALE

Dust Collection System

With more wood dust and shop related illness becoming apparent, dust collection is no longer a luxury but a matter of basic health care.

Keeping your shop environment healthy and hazard free is as easy as turning on your saw or planer, with our Dust Collection System.

We have chosen this Dust Collection System based on 20 years of shop experience

We based our needs upon horsepower, high static pressure, large volume of free flow air, extra large filter area, low noise level, return of heated air, ease of installation and cleaning including single or multiple machines use. Using this practical approach our highly efficient system takes up less floor area too.

A complete 1 hp system able to handle from 1 to 3 machines starts at \$560. The 2-5 hp systems able to handle from 1-7 machines simultaneously range in cost from \$750 to \$1250 and up. Please call for quotes on specific systems



ROUTER BITS CARBIDE TIPPED

—All Router Bits are top Industrial Quality with a money back guarantee *3 bit minimum *

Shank Diam.	Cutting Diam.	Cutting Length	Overall Length	Bit #	Price Ppd
1/4"	1/4"	3/4"	2 1/4"	1	\$ 7
1/4"	3/8"	1"	2 1/2"	2	\$ 8
1/4"	1/2"	3/4"	1 3/4"	3	\$ 8
1/4"	1/2"	3/4"	1 3/4"	4	\$ 8
1/4"	3/8"	1"	2"	5	\$ 9
1/4"	3/4"	3/4"	2"	6	\$10.50
1/2"	3/8"	1"	2 3/4"	7	\$ 8.50
1/2"	1/2"	1 1/4"	2 7/8"	8	\$ 9
1/2"	3/4"	1"	2 5/8"	9	\$11.50
1/4"	1/2"	1"	2 5/8"	10	\$10
1/2"	1/2"	1"	2 5/8"	11	\$11
1/4"	1/4" radius	1"	2 5/8"	12	\$25
1/4"	3/8" radius	1"	2 1/8"	13	\$19
1/4"	1/4" radius	3/4"	2 1/2"	14	\$17
1/4"	1/2" radius	3/4"	2 1/8"	15	\$21
1/2"	3/4" radius	1"	3"	16	\$38
1/2"	1" radius	1 1/4"	3 1/4"	17	\$70
1/2"	1/2" radius	1"	2 3/4"	18	\$37

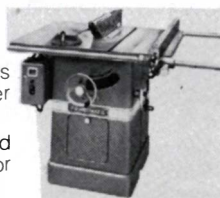
Router Bit Adaptor for Powermatic #26 Shaper or Rockwell Shaper \$92 ppd.



GREENLEE

Greenlee brad point drills; have precision ground flutes that shave the inside of the hole smooth, a sharp brad point that prevents skating and two razor sharp cutting spurs keep holes extra clean. Made from the finest grade of high carbon steel, tempered for long life, designed for use in drill press or 3/8" portable drills. The set includes 1/8", 3/16", 1/4", 5/16", 3/8", 7/16", 1/2" bits and a protective pouch. **Sale \$22**

Sizes 9/16", 5/8", 3/4", 7/8" & 1" all have 3/8" shanks and are loose packed, cost **\$46** both sets together **\$62 PPD.**



Powermatic

10' Table Saw Model 66 complete with: 48" rails; single phase 2hp (115/230 volt) motor; push button switch. **Sale \$1460**

Table Saw Accessories Biesemeyer T-square fence system with 72" rails & 32" extension table **\$250.** 3 hp Motor & Controls 1 or 3 ϕ add **\$170**

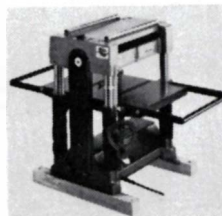
6" Joiner Model 50 complete with: single phase 3/4hp (115/230 volt) motor; single phase push button switch; stand. **Sale \$1099**

8" Joiner Model 60 complete with: stand, 1 1/2hp single phase or 3 phase motor, push button switch. **Sale \$1499**

12" Planer Model 100 complete with: single phase or 3 phase 3hp motor, magnetic switch. **Sale \$2550**

14" Bandsaw Model 141 complete with: single phase push button switch; stand; 1/4" blade; 3/4hp motor. **Sale \$1099**

Shaper Model 26 complete with: 2hp (115/230 volt) motor; single phase push button switch; interchangeable 3/4" and 1/2" spindles. **Sale \$1660**



Makita

15 5/8" Planer 2040 2hp 115 volt 6500 rpm motor; full cutting range: 1/4" thru 7 5/8"; 2 quick set knives; speed reducing kit; delivered assembled. **Sale \$1199**

12" Planer/6" Joiner 2030 2hp 115 volt motor; full cutting range: 1/4"-6 1/4"; 2 quick set knives; speed reducing kit; assembled. **Sale New \$1299/Used \$1050**

16" Band Saw 2116; 2 hp., (115/230 volt), 1 or 3 phase high torque 1150 rpm motor, 2" wide blade. Can accept down to 1/8" blades. List \$1880. **Sale New \$1299/Used \$1050**

New Product: The Makita Triple Ball Bearing Guide System now turns the 2116 resaw into a super scroll saw, able to accept blades from 2 3/8" to as thin as 1/8" without further alteration. May be purchased directly from us or through your local dealer. Complete with instructions. **\$225 PPD.**

2116 with triple bearing guide system **\$1499 Delivered**

3x24 Belt Sander (dustless) 9924DB; Full 7.8 amps; 1300 ft./min., only 10.2 lbs., 10 free belts. **Sale \$140 PPD.**

Unidrill 6000R Drill/Screwdriver combination; 3.3 amp motor; 3/8" capacity; quickchange clutch; reversible; variable speed 0-2600rpm belt clip. **Sale \$110 PPD.**

Router 3600 B Plunge Cutting, full 2 3/4hp, 22,000 r.p.m., 12 amp, accepts 1/4" & 3/8" & 1/2" shank bits, wrenches. **Sale \$190 PPD.**

Blade Sharpener 9820-2 Sharpens planer & joiner knives up to 1 5/4" wide, 7/8" wheel, water cooled, 560 rpm, 1.6 amp., med. grit stone & wrenches & blade holder. **Sale \$170 PPD.**

Finishing Sander B04510 Heavy duty; double insulated; 12000 rpm; 4 3/8" x 4" pad size. **Sale \$45 PPD.**

We now carry a complete line of used Makita tools, completely reconditioned. All used tools carry a full one year guarantee.

DeWalt

Model 7790-10 12" Radial arm saw; 3 1/2 hp; single phase; 115/230 volt; 3450 rpm motor; 5/8" arbor; cuts 4" deep at 90°; 2 3/4" at 45°; crosscut to 16"; rip 27"; stand; 12", 45 tooth C.T. saw blade. **Sale \$799**

DPS

Deep Penetrating Sealer

DPS penetrates deeply, seals, stabilizes and applies easily. It retards the movement of moisture from inside and outside by lining the cellular walls and sealing those cells.

Polymerization is complete in 24 hours, leaving a dry, clear, non-toxic, water-proof finish.

DPS penetrates from 1-4" deep on end grain, and up to 1/8" deep on surface grain.

DPS can be applied by rag, brush, spray or by dipping. It will enhance the wood's natural color and can be mixed with any oil based stain. Varnish, shellac, lacquer, enamels or urethanes may be applied over DPS; or two coats of DPS will provide a durable undercoat for all finishes.

Introductory Pint: \$6 including shipping.

**John Harra
Wood & Supply Co.**

511 West 25th Street, New York, NY 10001 212-741-0290

Freud SAW BLADES PPD.

Model	Diam	Teeth	Arbor	Use	List/SALE
72 ME	10"	40	5/8"	All Purp	\$66 /\$42
73 MD	10"	60	5/8"	Cut Off	\$76 /\$49
84 MD	10"	50	5/8"	Rip/Cross	\$72 /\$49
71 MA	10"	18	5/8"	Rip	\$61 /\$40
72 MF	12"	48	5/8"-1"	All Purp	\$82 /\$60
76 MB	12"	48	5/8"-1"	All Purp	\$99 /\$73
Futura 2000			3/4/1 1/4"	Doors	\$599/\$480
Perfecta		3	3/4"	Molding	\$220/\$185
Wood Working Box		3	3/4"	Doors & Molding	\$379/\$305
Casse e 65 Plus		3	3/4"	Molding	\$428/\$365
72 MD	9"	36	5/8"	All Purp	\$62 /\$41
74 ME	10"	80	5/8"	Thin Ker	\$96 /\$62
84 MC	10"	40	5/8"	Rip/Cross	\$68 /\$43
DADO 3	8"	18	5/8"	1/4"-13/16"	\$162/\$122

Rotary Phase Converters

Arco rotary phase converters convert single phase 220 volt electricity into 3 phase 220 volt electricity easily & safely. Arco rotary phase converters are available from 1 hp to 150 hp.

We have chosen Arco rotary phase converters because of their high standing in the electric phase conversion industry—they are #1. The Arco roto phase converter is the top of the line because: motors run at 100% of their rating, roto phase has a 100% power factor, Rotophase's life expectancy is 20 years of continuous service with a 13 month guarantee from date of shipping. We are stocking distributors. Call for specifics.

Catalog

The catalog contains the widest collection of professional tools, hardwood lumber, supplies and accessories ever printed between two covers. Valuable information, new products, special purpose tools, hard-to-find items, in all sizes; professional supplies, all industrially priced. **Send \$3 for this valuable catalog.**

HITACHI

In announcing Hitachi in the last issue of Fine Woodworking we said Hitachi was better. Here are 25 examples of why we think they're better yet.



B-600A 16" Band Saw 3 hp, 1 or 3 phase 15 amp, 110/220 volts, 1050 rpm, 3" wide blade, will accept down to 1/16" blade, double trunion, safety hand break, rack & pinion fence, helper guide; Improved blade guide, auxiliary triple bearing guide system for perfect scroll work. Resaw to 12 1/8", tilt 0 to 45 degrees, weight: 340 lbs. **Sale \$1799/\$500 with a Makita trade-in delivered.**

SB-110 Dustless Belt Sander, 4" x 24", 2 speed 8.7 amps, 115 volts, 15 belts, metal friction plate, center guide, belt tensioner. Weight: 17.1 lbs. **Sale \$250 ppd.**

SB-75 Dustless Belt Sander, 3" x 21", 2 speed, 8.7 amps, 115 volts, 15 belts, metal friction plate, center guide, belt tensioner. Weight: 10.8 lbs. **Sale \$150 ppd.**

SO-110 Finishing Sander 115 volts, 3.2 amps, 10,000 rpm motor, 105 pieces of sandpaper, foam rubber cushion, 4 1/2" by 9" sheet size, removable handle, weight: 5.9 lbs. **Sale \$130 ppd.**

SOD-110 Dustless Finishing Sander 115 volts, 3.2 amps, 10,000 rpm motor, 105 pieces of sandpaper, foam rubber cushion, 4 1/2" by 9" sheet size removable handle, weight: 6.6 lbs. **Sale \$140 ppd.**

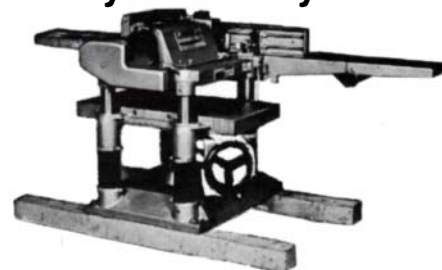
B-750A 24" Band Resaw 3 hp or 5 hp, 1 or 3 phase (call for specifics), 800 rpm, positive blade guide, 3" Stellite tipped blade, 14 3/4" depth of cut, 23" depth of throat, tilt 0 to 45 degrees, table size, 31 1/2" by 27 5/8", auxiliary out feed table, weight: 1013 lbs. **Sale \$2800**

Super Drill DR-10 variable speed, reversible 3/8" key chuck side handle, speed control switch, 0-2600 rpm, 3.5 lbs., 3.3 amps steelcase, Phillips bit, capacities in: wood 3/8", steel 3/8", teks screw 1/4", tapping: 1/4" steel 3/8" aluminum, belt hook. **Sale \$125 ppd.**

DTC 10 3/8" Cordless Drill 2 speed, reversing, battery pack, 29 watt quick recharger, key chuck, 2 Phillips bits, 2 straight bits, trigger lock, weight: 4.6 lbs. **Sale \$120 ppd.**

Cordless Drills DRC10 2 speed, 300/650 rpm, reversing, adjustable, torque settings from 6.9 lbs. to 34.7 lbs., battery, charger, key chuck, 2 Phillips bits, 2 straight bits, trigger lock, weight 3.3 lbs. **Sale \$130 ppd.**

Cordless Hammer Drill VTC-10 2 speed 750/1500 rpm, reversing, hammer drill, screwing, drilling, capacities in: wood 1/2" steel 1/4" brick 3/8" battery, charger, key chuck. Weight 4.9 lbs. **Sale \$147 ppd.**



F1000A 12 1/2" Planer, 6 5/8" Joiner, 3 hp, 15 amps, 110 volts, 10,400 rpm motor. All gear & chain drive planer (no belts), 1/8" depth of cut, 3/16" thru 6 5/8" cutting height, jointer bed 63". 4 column support, chip blower, speed reducing kit, magnetic blade setting system. Weight: 320 lbs. **Sale \$1,799/\$500 with a Makita trade-in delivered.**

F1500 18" Planer, 10" Joiner, 230 volts, 10 amps, 5 hp, 1 or 3 phase (call for specifics), 1800 rpm motor, variable speed feed, 1/8" thru 9.8" cutting height, built-in hand brake. Jointer bed 10 by 70" cast iron construction, max depth of cut 1/3". Weight 1188 lbs. **Sale \$5980 delivered. Call for acceptable trade-in.**

P-100 12 1/8" Planer, 3 hp, 15 amps, 110 volts, 10,400 rpm motor. All gear & chain drive (no belts), 1/8" depth of cut, 3/16" thru 6 5/8" cutting height, 4 column support, chip blower, speed reducing kit, magnetic blade setting system. Weight: 265 lbs. **Sale \$1115/\$250 with a Makita trade-in delivered.**

Screw Guns W6VA variable speed, reversible, drywall or teks, 3.5 amps, 3.4 lbs., belt clip, auto stop, bit. 0-2600 rpm or 0-4000 rpm, adjustable depth. **Sale \$147 ppd.**

Hammer Drills 2 speed, variable speed, reversible. 3.9 amps to 8 amps, 3/8" to 1 1/2" bit capacities, 4 lbs. to 15.2 lbs., side handles and depth gauges. 11 models. Call for specifics.

Router TR12 Plunge cutting, over 3.25 hp, 22,000 rpm, 115 volts, 12.2 amp., 1/4, 3/8, 1/2 collets, wrenches, straight guide, curved guide, guide holder, template guide, 1/2" c.t. router bit. 3 plunge depth stops, precision depth gauge, round base. Weight: 12.3 lbs. **Sale \$256 ppd.**

Router TR8 Plunge cutting, 1 1/2 hp, 115 volts, 6.9 amps, 24,000 rpm, 1/4 collet, wrenches straight guide and guide bar, template guide bar holder. 3 plunge cutting depth stops, 1/2 and 1/4" c.t. router bit, precision depth gauge, round and straight base. Weight: 6.4 lbs. **Sale \$185 ppd.**

Router Trimmer TR6 1 hp, 30,000 rpm motor, 4 amps, 115 volts, 1/4" collet. 0 to 45 degree tilt base, straight guide, 1/4 c.t., router bit, weight: 3.9 lbs. **Sale \$120 ppd.**

Planer F-20 A (hand planer) cutting width 3 1/4" max. depth 1/32". 3.4 amps, 15,000 rpm motor, length 11 5/8", guide set gauge, sharpening assembly, 2 knife, weight 6.1 lbs. **Sale \$115 ppd. Carbide blades add \$40.**

Circular Saws PSM-7 7 1/2", maximum cutting depth 2-9/16" at 90°, 2" at 45°, 11 amp motor, 12.5 lbs., safety clutch, auto stop safety lock, spindle lock, 115 volts, saw blade guide. **Sale \$130 ppd.**

Jig Saw JHT-60A 2 speed (3,200/2,700) stroke 1" 3.5 amp, 115 volt, capacity: wood 2 3/8" steel 1/4", roller bearing drive guide, universal split-shaft blade holder, 4 blades, center guide, circle guide, weight 5.2 lbs. **Sale \$155 ppd.**

Jig saw JHV-60 variable speed 0-3,200, stroke 1", 3.5 amp, 115 volt, capacity: wood 2 3/8" steel 1/4", roller bearing guide, universal split-shaft blade holder, 4 blades, center guide, circle guide, weight 5.2 lbs. **Sale \$162 ppd.**

Miter Saw TSB-15" for cutting wood, plastic, aluminum, 45°-90°-45° safety lock switch, dust bag, capacity 4 3/4" high x 6 3/8" wide at 90°, 4 3/4" x 4 3/4" wide at 45°, ac/dc switch, 13 amp motor, 1" arbor, easy set angle stop, weight 55 lbs. **Sale \$450 ppd.**

Miter Saw TSB-10" for cutting wood, plastic, aluminum, 45°-90°-45° safety lock switch, dust bag, capacity 3 1/8" high x 4 5/16" wide at 90°, 3 1/8" high x 3 1/8" at 45°, ac/dc switch, 13 amp motor, 5/8" arbor, easy set angle stop, weight 44 lbs. **Sale \$305 ppd.**

Universal Saw SR-15 Electric Miter-Saw; wood, steel, aluminum, piping 45°-90°-45°, 15" c.t. saw blade, 15 amp motor, ac/dc switch, hold down clamp, cutting capacity 7 3/4" wide x 5" high at 90°, 4 3/8" wide x 5" high at 45° easy set angle stop, arbor 1", weight 91.3 lbs. **Sale \$650 ppd.**

★ **HITACHI CATALOG** ★
Send for complete color catalog. Please include \$2 for postage and handling.

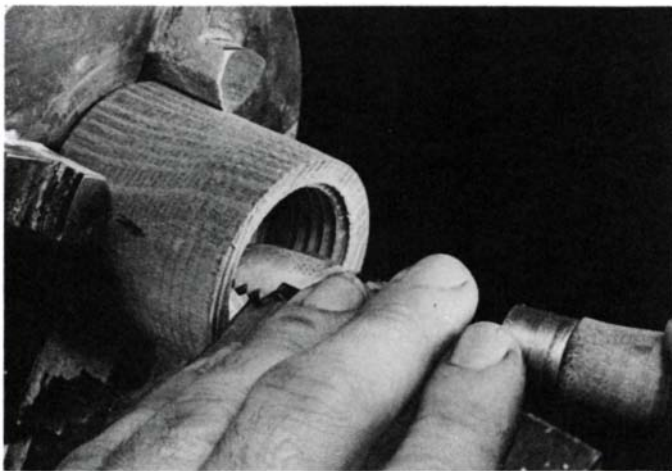
JOHN HARRA WOOD & SUPPLY CO. INC. RETAIL FRANCHISES are now available in selected areas throughout the United States and its territories. Please send all inquiries to John Harra Wood and Supply Co., Franchise Dept., 511 West 25th St., New York, N.Y. 10001. 212-741-0290

Making threads in end grain—*I recently bought a tap and die set for making threads in wood and it does a fine job when cutting face grain. But when I tried tapping threads in end grain, such as the end of a dowel, the threads simply tore out. I tried oiling the wood, soaking it in paraffin and I even set up the job in a machinists' tapper to avoid wobble. None of these methods worked very well. I finally solved the problem by cutting the threads in turned plugs made from face grain and then gluing the plugs in place. That method works fine but it takes a lot of work. Are there any better ways?*

—Henry J. Bellarts, Richland, Wash.

RICHARD STARR REPLIES: As you have concluded, tear-out in thread making is a difficult problem, and woodworkers as far back as Leonardo DaVinci have wrestled with it. Leonardo came up with a long, tapered tap, cut into three sections and mounted on a Y-shaped yoke. The tapers allowed gradual cutting, and tear-out was probably reduced that way.

Another way of cutting threads is to hand-chase them on a lathe, a method that works well with a bit of practice. Inside or outside threads can be chased by filing a tool to the shape of the thread profile. With the lathe turning at about 500 RPM, the thread is "struck" by moving the tool into the work with a stroking motion so that a full thread is produced in one revolution of the lathe. Once the strike is completed the actual cutting or chasing of the thread is accomplished by repeated scraping that results in very clean threads in the harder woods. I make my chasing tool out of 1/8-in. die stock that is soft and easy to file. I use a triangular file to cut the notches; their spacing is determined by the screw's pitch. For cutting 8 threads per inch, I use a five-notch tool, but more or less would probably do. This photo shows inside threads being chased:



The technique seems difficult at first but it can be developed with practice. There is an unmistakable feeling of "rightness" when you've learned how to match the tool movement to the speed of the lathe. For a more detailed discussion of thread chasing, I suggest reading *Hand or Simple Turning* by John Jacob Holtzapffel (Dover Books). This book also describes several other methods of making wooden threads. In the meantime, your method of making face-grain plugs and gluing them in place may be as good as any for small numbers of threaded pieces. [Richard Starr is a contributing editor of this magazine.]

Mixing oils for color—*Can Watco and Minwax be mixed to get a finish of a different color?*

—David Dike, Norfolk, Va.

OSCAR MACQUIDDY REPLIES: No, don't mix the two types of oils. Stay within finish families and use color as the manufacturer recommends. If you start with Watco, stay with Watco.

Watco stains are strong colors and I dilute them 50% with methanol until I get the color I want. Remember, wet color is different from dry color so experiment on a scrap piece of wood. [Oscar MacQuiddy teaches antique restoration and refinishing in Southgate, Calif.]

A warped veneered tabletop—*I recently glued strips of oak 3/8 in. thick and 2 1/4 in. wide to a base of 3/4-in. mahogany plywood to form a circular tabletop. It has since developed a terrible warp and the strips are pulling away from each other. I am pleased with the pattern and want to make another but how can I avoid the warp?*

—Bob Sickenger, Union City, Calif.

R. BRUCE HOADLEY REPLIES: It sounds like you have created a classic example of unbalanced construction. The plywood in your top is quite stable but the oak strips aren't and when they tried to shrink when exposed to drier conditions, the movement was resisted and the warp resulted. There are several ways to avoid the problem. One is to make certain that the moisture content of the oak pieces is at equilibrium with the environment the table will eventually be in. This approach, although difficult to do where relative humidity varies, will make further movement unlikely and should prevent the warp. You could also glue up the tabletop out of solid stock and fasten it to a supporting frame in such a way as to allow movement across the grain. Veneering both sides of the plywood with the same thickness of wood should also help since it would create a balanced construction similar to that of plywood composed of an odd number of individual plies. Finally, coating both sides of any glued-up woodwork with an equal amount of finish should minimize unequal moisture exchange that leads to warping. [R. Bruce Hoadley is a wood technologist and a contributing editor to this magazine.]

Mysterious finish is tough to remove—*I've been trying to remove a brightish-red finish from an oak high chair and so far I've tried methylene chloride, straight lacquer thinner, denatured alcohol and finally lye. Only the lye worked and not very well. Do you have any idea what kind of finish I'm dealing with?*

—Joe Van DeRostyne, Aberdeen, S.D.

JOHN SCHMUECKER REPLIES: Without seeing the piece, it's difficult to identify the finish, but what you may have is wood that was dyed rather than stained or finished in any conventional way. If it was covered with a topcoat, your strippers have probably long since removed that layer. Try applying household bleach liberally with a brush, starting at the bottom of the chair. If the chair is dyed, the bleach should lighten most of it. Failing that, an acid-based methylene chloride stripper might work better than the one you used. Acid-based strippers are sold by several companies dealing in furniture stripping products. [John Schmuecker is president of Bix Process Systems Inc., a manufacturer of stripping products.]

Protecting tools from rust—*A couple of years ago I purchased a six-piece Swiss carving set from a mail-order company. A while back, I noticed they were getting patches of rust on them, even the ones I don't use. I thought about putting oil on them to stop the rust but I'm afraid the protective coating will spoil my carvings. How can I clean and preserve these tools between use? How should I store these tools to protect them?*

—George Adams, Louisville, Ohio

A bit of fine steel wool should knock off any rust spots on your tools. After you have done that, you could treat them with a rust-preventive spray, or wrap them in protective paper. One type of spray is available from Schwab Industries Inc., 330 Alta Ave., Santa Monica, Calif. 90402. Protective paper is



Situated in Paolo Soleri's "City of the Future" in the central Arizona desert, the Arcosanti woodshop presents four unique and challenging workshops for the 1982 season.

5 April - 14 May: Canoe and paddle construction. Focusing on the design and dynamics of cedar strip canoe and hardwood paddle construction.

24 May - 2 July: Furniture, bent and curved. Concentrating on curved forms; turned, shaped and bent, including steambox construction.

6 Sept. - 15 Oct.: Carved doors. Hardwood panel door construction in conjunction with ornamental carving.

25 Oct. - 6 Dec.: Furniture, joints and joinery. Furniture design and construction with an emphasis on handtools.

Tuition: \$750 (all workshops) includes room and board. Limited enrollment.

For more information write: K. Gordon, Arcosanti Woodshop, Mayer, Arizona 86333

ARCHITECT'S PLANS FOR MINIATURE HOUSES

Build one of these delightful **DOLLHOUSES!** Eleven architecturally and historically authentic styles: WILLIAMSBURG COLONIAL, GEORGIAN, WEDDING CAKE VICTORIAN, CAPECOD, SALT-BOX, TUDOR, FARMHOUSE, 1900 FIREHOUSE, CONTEMPORARY, \$6.50 each, ANTEBELLUM PLANTATION, \$9.50, SECOND EMPIRE VICTORIAN, \$10.50. All for \$59.95. Saving \$18.55.

BEAUTIFULLY SCALED 1" = 1'



SECOND EMPIRE VICTORIAN



DOLL DOMICILES

DEPT. FW
Box # 81026 Atlanta, Ga. 30384

Brochure \$1.00



BUTTERNUT, WALNUT, ROSEWOOD, PINE, CHERRY, BUCKEYE and about a dozen other woods, in boards, slabs and freeform cut ovals. Pieces up to 6" thick, 3' wide and 16' long in some species. We specialize in coffee tables, benches, bars, carving stock, clock ovals and movements, accurately cut for you to finish. We sell by mail and from our fantastic wood "museum," 9-5 except Sunday. Send 50¢ for brochure.

WEIRD WOOD, Box 190FW
Chester, Vt. 05143, 802-875-3535

RECANE for fun and profit



Recane or re-rush heirloom chairs — for yourself or for others as a profitable hobby — with our full line of materials & instruction books.

Since 1934 America's largest selection of caning & basketry materials & supplies —

- Superior quality weaving cane & machine woven cane
- Flat, oval & round reeds
- Fibre & genuine rush
- Danish seat cord
- Raffia, rattan, seagrass

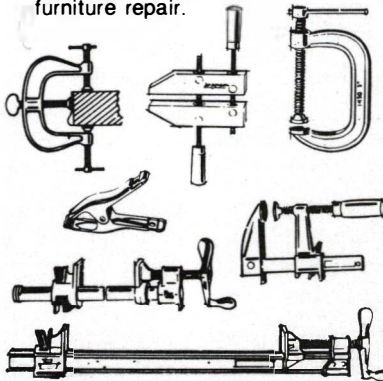
Illustrated catalog with complete how-to-do-it information, prices, order form: \$1 (refundable with 1st order)

CANE & BASKET SUPPLY CO.

1283 S. Cochran, Dept. FW, Los Angeles, CA 90019

"Jorgensen" AND "Pony" CLAMPS

Dependable extra hands for all types of clamping and work-holding jobs: woodworking projects, home maintenance, and furniture repair.

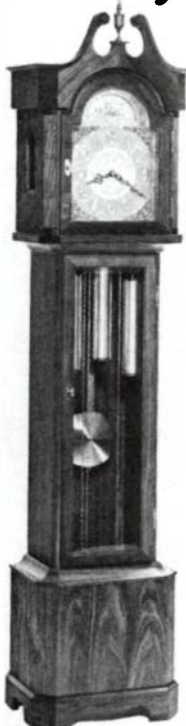


Write for **FREE LITERATURE**. For big 32-page "how-to-clamp-it" catalog, send 25¢.

ASK YOUR DEALER

ADJUSTABLE CLAMP COMPANY
THE CLAMP FOLKS
431 N. Ashland Ave./Chicago, IL 60622

Create A Family Treasure



Build a grandfather clock handcrafted by grandfathers from one of our Red-i-Kut kits in walnut, cherry, oak or mahogany. Beveled plate glass included. The quality is built in — you just assemble it!

Choose tubular bell or rod chime movements with spun brass Lady Florentine or Goddess Diana Lyre pendulums. Hand painted moon wheel scenes.

Write for **FREE brochure**, or we'll show you how to build "from scratch."

3 plans for only \$3.00.

Kuempel Chime Clock Works

Established in 1916

Dept. 60421195 Minnetonka Blvd., Excelsior, MN 55331

This W&H Molder/Planer Will Add Versatility And Economy To Your Workshop

Versatile — Because it does so many jobs so easily: baseboards, picture frames, raised panelling, models, miniature doll furniture, and much more. Converts from molder to planer in two minutes.

Economical — Because it does the job of several tools. Eliminates machine shop setting. Helps cut the cost of restoring old homes, building new ones. Cast iron and steel construction assures long, trouble-free life.

For molding, select from 40 sets of standard knives, or have special knives made from a sketch or sample of finished molding up to 7" wide.



For planing, converts waste and rough-sawn wood to dressed lumber, virtually free of wave and chatter marks. Planes boards up to 14" wide; planes down to 1/16".



Handfeed and powerfeed models available, starting from \$449.00. Master Charge and VISA cards accepted. Free brochure on request.



WILLIAMS & HUSSEY MACHINE CORP.

DEPT. 16, Millford, N. H. 03055
Call toll-free 1-800-258-1380

made by Brauer Bros., 2012 Washington, St. Louis, Mo. 63103. Even after treatment, the tools will hold up better if they are stored in a dry tool cabinet.

Flat or glossy lacquers, which is harder?—*I've been using lacquers of various gloss levels in my shop and some of my customers say that the flat finishes are softer and scratch more easily. Is this true?*

—R.J. Burke, Belmont, Calif.

HERB YATOVITZ REPLIES: Technically, yes, practically no. Straight lacquers are high gloss and are made flatter by adding flattening agents such as silica gel or magnesium silicate. These chemicals crystallize in the lacquer film when it dries, and break up light as it strikes the surface, thus reducing the reflectivity or gloss. As more flattening agents are added, the crystals slightly reduce the lacquer film cohesion, and this does make it a bit softer. But the practical difference in hardness is so slight that it is generally not noticeable. [Herb Yatovitz is a chemist for National Chemical and Plastics Co., a manufacturer of wood lacquers and finishes.]

Inlaying a wooden light frame—*I've just finished building a wooden light frame for my bathroom and I want to inlay decorative strips around the perimeter an inch or so in from the edge. I've never attempted inlay before and I would like your advice on how to proceed.*

—Ed Jonke, Glen Arm, Md.

TAGE FRID REPLIES: If you have a router, use a 1/8-in. diameter straight-flute cutter to rout a groove to accept the inlay. Set the router to cut a groove just slightly shallower than the thickness of the inlay you plan to use. Clamp a board or straight-

edge to the light frame to serve as a guide for the router, and move the router against the rotation of the bit. When you have cut the grooves, rip the inlay for a tight fit and force it into the grooves with a bit of glue spread on the inlay. When the glue has cured, plane or sand the inlay flush with the surface of the frame. Another tool for doing the same thing is called an inlay cutter and it cuts the groove with a small iron like a plane. Inlay cutters can be bought from Woodcraft Supply, 313 Montvale Ave., Woburn, Mass 01888. [Tage Frid is a contributing editor to this magazine.]

Toxic dusts from plywood and particleboard—*Products like plywood and particleboard are constructed with formaldehyde glues and since I use a lot of them, I wonder about the danger of breathing dust when cutting them. I have built a shroud for my table saw and connected it to a shop vacuum. This setup reduces the dust level but does it limit exposure to possible toxins?*

—John M. Gaffin, Gualala, Calif.

MICHAEL MCCANN REPLIES: Formaldehyde from glues used in woodworking shops is a real health concern for two reasons: it is a suspected carcinogen, and breathing it can sensitize some people so that they experience allergic reactions when exposed subsequently. The chemical is released when materials glued with formaldehyde adhesives are cut or processed in woodshops. In fact, a certain level of "outgassing" releases formaldehyde into the air even when the panels are in storage. Dust masks are of little help because the formaldehyde is in gaseous form. Probably the best way to minimize the hazard is to install a dust collection system that exhausts air and dust outside the shop itself. Although it will raise utility bills by pumping heat out during the winter, this ventilation method

OWN THIS CLASSIC

"Roll Top" OAK DESK



FREE FULL COLOR CATALOG
GIVES YOU ALL THE FACTS

Here's the turn-of-the-century "Roll-Top" you've always wanted. A full size oak desk (oak and oak-veneers) now yours at extraordinary savings ...because you put it together yourself from pre-cut Kit parts. No special tools needed. When finished, you'll possess a magnificent showpiece for your home or office — worth at least twice what you paid for the Kit! Send for details without obligation.

Please send my free Craftsman's Corner catalog featuring the Classic Roll-Top Desk and many other hardwood kits. I understand I am under no obligation.

Print Name _____
Address _____ Apt. _____
City _____
State _____ Zip _____

Craftsman's Corner Dept 2-FC 4317 - 41st St • Box AP • Des Moines, Iowa 50302



June 7-August 13, 1982

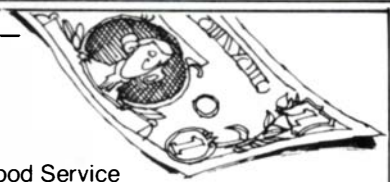
A series of one and two week workshops for students of all ability levels and media interests.

Wood (Alphonse Mattia, Mark-Melvin Lindquist) - Clay (low fire, porcelain, salt, production, raku, wood) - Fiber (weaving, basketry, spinning, vegetable dyeing) - Fabric (screen printing, photo imagery, resist, quilting) - Metal (blacksmithing, raising, enameling, casting, fabrication) - Stain glass - Papermaking - Bookbinding - Painting - Drawing - Promotional Graphics - Photography.

Assistantships/Scholarships
Special High School Workshop
August 16-20, 1982

ARROWMONT
School of Arts and Crafts
Box 567, Gallatinburg, TN 37738
(615) 436-5860

Woodworkers— WHY PAY MORE?



Consult with Bosko Wood Service
before you spend more on your next project!

- Native & Imported Hard Woods (You select the wood)
- Custom Cutting & Milling
- Attractive Discounts
- Extra Thick & Extra Wide Stock

Send for FREE price list.

BOSKO WOOD SERVICE
The Full Service Wood Store
611 W. Lunt Ave.
Schaumburg, Il. 60193
(312) 893-5225

HOURS:
Mon - Fri
7 30 A.M. - 7 30 P.M.
Sat
8 A.M. - 5 P.M.
Sun
8 A.M. - 4 P.M.

WE'RE HAVING A SALE!

At Hiller Hardware we're pleased to offer quality Freud products at Special Sale Prices.

freud® DS 306 DADO SET
LIST PRICE 133.10

SALE PRICE: 99.95



Freud carbide tipped Dado Heads are guaranteed to produce a smooth and accurate groove either with or across the grain. You will obtain excellent results when grooving in soft wood, hardwood or plywood.

Freud carbide tipped Dado Heads are made with the finest materials available and the highest standards of workmanship.

INDUSTRIAL GRADE CARBIDE TIPPED SAWBLADES

Designed for general ripping, cut off and mitre work in both hard and softwood, plywood, laminates, chipboard and particle board.

Designed for general crosscutting and trimming of wood, plywood, and prefinished materials such as paneling, pressboard, hard board, chipboard, particle board, and composition materials. Mostly used on table saws overhead saws, radial arm saws, etc.

LU72M010 LIST: 65.31
SALE PRICE: 39.90

10" Diameter, 40 Teeth, 5/8" Bore, ATB Grind

LU73M010 LIST: 75.86
SALE PRICE: 49.90

10" Diameter, 60 Teeth, 5/8" Bore, TCG Grind

- Call or write today!
- Visa and Mastercard accepted
- Prices quoted, delivered anywhere in Continental USA.

Hiller Hardware

1411 Assembly Street P.O. Box 1762
Columbia, South Carolina 29202

Phone: (803) 779-3131

Your Woodworking Specialists in the Southeast
We Carry The Full Line of Freud Tools

Cowells Powerline Two-Speed Band Saw



Shown with optional Jig Saw/Fret Saw attachment

SPECIFICATIONS

Height*	22"
Depth	12 5/8"
Width	23 1/2"
Weight	33 lbs.
Cuts up to 3" thick wood and 1" thick brass, copper and mild steel.	
Table	14" x 12"
Tilts	45 degrees
Throat	12"
Blade Speeds:	1300 ft/min
	350 ft/min

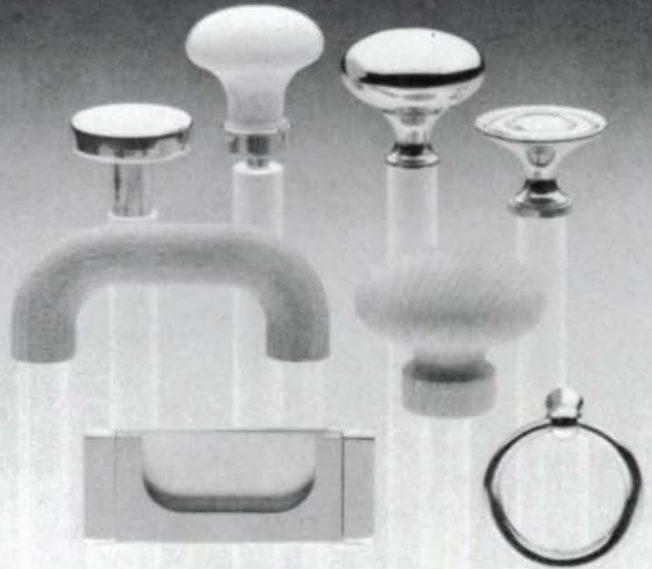
The Cowells Powerline Bandsaw is featured in the Cowells Tool Catalog — Fall Edition Write or phone (312) 833-4405 for your **FREE COPY** now!

Other items include wood-turning and metal-working lathes, drill press, jig saw, grinders, chisels, gouges, carving tools, books, etc., etc.

COWELLS

226 EAST ADELE COURT - P.O. BOX 427
VILLA PARK, ILLINOIS 60181
PHONE (312) 833-4405 TELEX 72-1586

Cabinet Hardware



The Finishing Touch, German made.

Elegant, enduring crystal, brass and china cabinet hardware, forged and cut to enhance the art of the cabinetmaker, furniture restorer—or anyone who cares enough to maintain quality *throughout* a project.

The 1982 Woodcraft Supplement features a superior selection of hardware sure to meet the most discriminating artisan's requirements: solid brass drawer and door knobs ... Bavarian cut crystal knobs, shanked in solid brass ... Brown China high-style knobs ... even synthetic porcelain for increased durability where needed—an array of fine finishing hardware assembled at a single, convenient source.

The 1982 Woodcraft Catalog & Supplement

The Woodcraft Tool Catalog has been imitated but never equaled. Now accompanied by the 1982 Woodcraft Supplement to incorporate even more woodworking tools and project books, our Catalog will put the world's finest woodworking, woodturning, cabinetmaking and carving tools exactly where they belong: at your fingertips.

Two-year subscription, \$2.50. Color, 112-page Catalog & 52-page Supplement.



WOODCRAFT®



Dept. FW32
313 Montvale Ave.
Woburn, MA 01888

I enclose \$2.50 for a 2-year Woodcraft Catalog & Supplement subscription (refundable).

I enclose \$1.00 for the Supplement only.

Payment by: Check MC Amex Visa

Card No. _____ Expires _____

NAME _____

ADDRESS _____

CITY _____ STATE _____ ZIP _____

will reduce formaldehyde levels. Pending more conclusive data on the cancer-causing effects of formaldehyde, those exposed to it should watch out for such allergic reactions as asthma, skin problems, headaches or other medical symptoms that may have no other clear cause. Once you are sensitized to the chemical, you can get allergic reactions from many sources including carpets, insulation and a range of synthetic fabrics. [Michael McCann is the author of *Artist Beware*, a book on hazardous materials used by artists and craftworkers.]

Chemical dye—*For years, I've been using a concentrated solution of potassium dichromate to darken cherry so that it appears aged after finishing with linseed or Danish oil. Am I correct in assuming that this is harmless to the wood and that it is not a stain?*

—E. Jeff Justis, Memphis,

GEORGE FRANK REPLIES: To my knowledge, potassium dichromate is completely harmless to wood and it isn't a stain but a dye. On woods with no tannic acid, it may convey its own yellow-orange hue; on woods with tannic acid, potassium dichromate can produce a great variety of colors. When using it, be sure to work in a room with good ventilation and wear eye protection and gloves. [George Frank is a consulting editor to this magazine.]

Cone-cut veneer—*Looking through a book on forestry, I saw a picture of a table veneered in something called "cone cut," a patented method for slicing veneer. As I understood it, the cut is similar to the shaving produced when sharpening a pencil. How is this veneer made and where can I get it?*

—Stan Simmons, Meraux, La.

JIM LEE REPLIES: The cut you refer to is actually called a natur-

ally matched circle cut and it was manufactured up until about 25 years ago by Hartzell Hardwoods Inc. of Piqua, Ohio. Your understanding of the process is quite correct: the veneer was sliced from tapered logs varying in length from 30 in. to 8 ft. After the taper was milled, the log was rotated into a stationary knife and a continuous piece of veneer was sliced off.

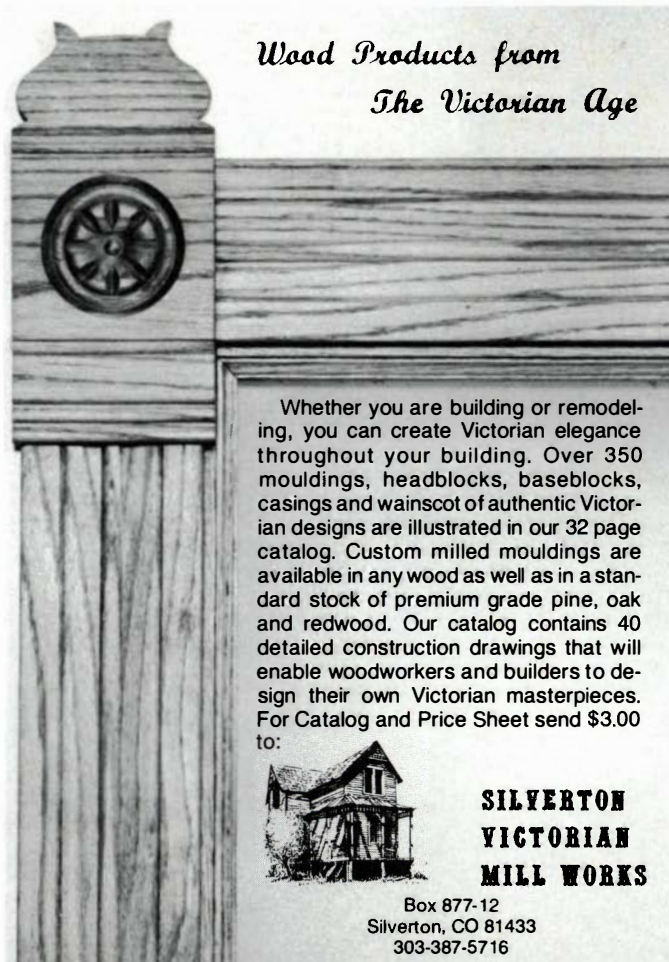
The process produced disc-shaped veneers with no joints, perfect for making a round table, which was in fact what the stuff was used for. Hartzell cut naturally-matched circles as large as 48 in. in dia. although most were smaller. The veneer discs had small circular openings in their centers, which Hartzell dealt with by enlarging the hole with a star-shaped die and then inserting a decorative patch of corresponding shape. Hartzell is still in business and apparently still has the machinery to produce matched circle cuts but no longer does so because of low demand. [Jim Lee is with the Fine Hardwoods/American Walnut Association.]

Finishing a walnut grandfather clock—*Can you give me information on how to finish a walnut grandfather clock? I would like to use an oil finish to do justice to the wood's beautiful color, texture and grain.*

—Robert Stewart, Eddystone, Pa.


ANDY MARLOW REPLIES: To prepare the surface for finish, remove all visible planer marks, saw marks and other blemishes with 60-grit garnet paper, always sanding with the grain. When the marks are gone, keep sanding about the same length of time, still using 60-grit paper.

Now, using 80-grit paper, sand for a single period of time (call it a cycle) to remove the deepest scratches left by the 60-grit paper. Follow with 120-grit open-coat finishing paper



**Wood Products from
The Victorian Age**

Whether you are building or remodeling, you can create Victorian elegance throughout your building. Over 350 mouldings, headblocks, baseblocks, casings and wainscot of authentic Victorian designs are illustrated in our 32 page catalog. Custom milled mouldings are available in any wood as well as in a standard stock of premium grade pine, oak and redwood. Our catalog contains 40 detailed construction drawings that will enable woodworkers and builders to design their own Victorian masterpieces. For Catalog and Price Sheet send \$3.00 to:



**SILVERTON
VICTORIAN
MILL WORKS**

Box 877-12
Silverton, CO 81433
303-387-5716



ANDERSON RANCH ARTS CENTER
BOX 2410 ASPEN, COLORADO 81612 (303) 923-3181

SUMMER WORKSHOPS '82

Sam Maloof
Jere Osgood
John Nyquist
John & Carolyn Grew-Sheridan
Walker Weed

David Ellsworth
Wendell Castle
James Krenov

write for brochure



WETZLER

ASK FOR FREE CATALOG
SOLD THROUGH LEADING DISTRIBUTORS
WETZLER CLAMP CO., Inc.

43-13 11TH STREET
LONG ISLAND CITY, N.Y. 11101
TE L. 212-784-2874



**Over 30 Different
"Foreign & Domestic Hardwoods"**
Spalted Woods
Turning Squares
Carving Stock
Plywoods

—ALSO—

DPS Finishing Supplies Hirsh Chisels, Gouges
Full Size Furniture Plans Makita Power Tools

301B Rt. 22 East
Greenbrook, N.J. 08812
(201) 752-4884
Catalog—50*

Remove large quantities of wood fast with New Super Hog Power Adze

Save time and effort making contours with our unique cutting head. $\frac{5}{8}$ -11 thread fits most industrial heavy duty disc grinders. Use at speeds 2,500-8,000 r.p.m. Comes with 3 extra blades.

Carving head only **\$110.**
Includes Postage

Amer. Exp., money order, check, Master Chrg., Visa

Order Metabo grinder AG 1710, ideal for use with Super Hog 15 amp motor 6,500 rpm \$239. pp.

Sculpture Associates, Ltd.

114. E. 25th St. N.Y., N.Y. 10010

Send \$1. for 60 page catalog of fine woodworking tools



ONE GOOD TURN

DESERVES ANOTHER

Our Model 3010 Duplicator Attachment will make identical wood turnings from either round or flat patterns.

Send for **FREE** literature on our whole line of wood turning accessories including:

- Lathe **SAFETY SHIELDS**
- The **U-TOOL WOODSHAVER**
- The **UNI-CENTER SYSTEM**

Toolmark Co.
6840 Shingle Creek Parkway
Minneapolis, Minnesota 55430
(612) 561-4210

PEGBOARD STORAGE SYSTEM

Throw away those cluttered boxes and old tin cans: Get those small parts off the workbench... always in plain sight. Jars mount onto both $\frac{1}{4}$ " & $\frac{1}{2}$ " pegboard by their red caps. Caps stay put, jars are easily removed. Handy Dandy caps & jars: 10-\$4.75; 36-\$13.25; 72-\$25.25; 144-\$48.25. No COD. Plus \$1.75 shipping and handling per order. Check or money order.

WICKLIFFE INDUSTRIES
Box 286, FW32 Wickliffe, Ohio 44092

POWERMATIC



- Heavy 1-Piece C.I. Frame
- C.I. Wheels
- All Ball Bearing Upper Guides
- Hinged Wheel Covers
- Wide Spaced Trunnion For Max. Support

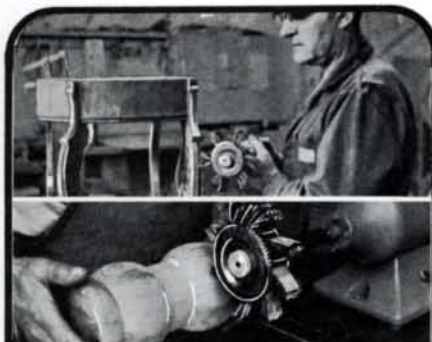
**Model 141—
11" Band Saw**

This, and other fine Powermatic Shop Equipment, is in stock ready for immediate delivery. (Factory direct shipments can be arranged.)



WOODSHOP SPECIALTIES

Box 1013 East Middlebury, Vt. 05740
802-388-7969



Surprising How Much Hand Sanding can be Saved with a SAND-O-FLEX[®] CONTOUR SANDER

14,000 "Sanding Fingers" per minute, eliminates tedious hand sanding.

Firm cushioning brushes gently force slashed abrasive strips over any shape and will not harm or gouge fine detail or veneers.

YARDS OF ABRASIVE CLOTH UNDER COVER



MERIT
ABRASIVE PRODUCTS, INC.
201 W. Manville, P.O. Box 5447
Compton, California 90224
ORDER BY MAIL If not available at your hardware or home center

SANDER KIT No. 458 brush 6"x1" wheel and 3 abrasive refill coils. Adapters for 3/8" or 1/4" drill chucks or bench motor, in sturdy plastic carrying and storage case. Includes postage & handling. **\$25.95** FW

For the Time of Your Life, send for our new 32-page Color Catalog



You decide how much of a challenge you want. Our

new catalog brings you the world's most classic clock designs, carefully reproduced from the originals. And whether you're a beginner or a master craftsman, you'll always find a clockmaking project that's perfect for you. Our Skill Level 1 & 2 kits are pre-cut, ready for easy assembly. Our Skill Level 3 projects are designed for more advanced woodworkers. And for the ultimate clockbuilding challenge, try our Skill Level 4 clocks. We'll send you blueprints, flat lumber, moldings and turnings... you do the rest!



The finest hardwoods, dials and West German movements. Mason & Sullivan offers you the finest black walnut, oak, cherry and Honduras Mahogany available anywhere. It's a full $\frac{3}{4}$ " thick, blemish-free and carefully handmatched for uniform appearance. You'll find the same high quality in our precision movements, too. They're manufactured to our own strict specifications by one of West Germany's oldest and largest producers of clock mechanisms. To complete your project, choose one of our handsome solid brass dials, or any of our beautifully hand-finished dials. Superb quality throughout.

Everything you need to build an heirloom clock. When you choose Mason & Sullivan clock kits, you'll be rewarded with a finer, more intricately detailed "classic" timepiece than you ever thought possible. A true heirloom. For complete details, including specifics on our unique guarantee...

Send for our new color catalog today.

YES! Send me your 32-page color catalog of heirloom quality clocks, dials, movements, hardware, tools, books and accessories. Enclosed is \$1 for postage and handling.



Name _____
Address _____
City/State _____ Zip _____

Mason & Sullivan
"Fine Clockmakers For Over 33 Years."
Dept. 2124, Osterville, MA 02655

for two cycles. Do not use finer grit paper at this time.

Brush on a generous coat of boiled linseed oil. Allow it to dry (for four to six hours) until a thin film or skin begins to form over the surface. The timing is crucial. Then rub vigorously with a coarsely woven cloth until the surface appears dry. Allow it to sit overnight, and then sand for one cycle with 220-grit finishing paper. An oily substance will build up on the paper, by which time it will have served its purpose.

Repeat, with as many applications of oil, fine-sanding between each, as is necessary to achieve the desired gloss. Apply the last two coats without sanding. This process can produce a beautiful finish, but depending on the kind of use it will receive, some maintenance may be required in the form of later applications of oil. [Andy Marlow is a cabinetmaker and a consulting editor to this magazine.]

Readers Want to Know:

I would like to know if anyone has any experience using the Parks jointer-planer combination machine.

—Mark Goetsch, Detroit, Mich.

I'd like to know about books and booklets that deal solely with, or have entire chapters on, shop-built equipment, jigs and such. A comprehensive list might be a real boon.

—Matt Olsson, Pekin, Ill.

I have a special interest in wooden toys and rocking horses and I'm looking for historical information and books on the subject. Any help would be appreciated.

—Thomas S. Lix, Roslindale, Mass.

Fine Woodworking readers frequently ask for manuals and information on Walker-Turner machinery. We have on file a manual on the Walker-Turner Lathe but we would like copies

of the other machine manuals for this brand. If you have manuals on such equipment please send us a photocopy or your manual, and we will copy it and send it back to you. Send manuals to Q&A, Box 355, Newtown, Conn. 06470.

Readers Can't Find:

... slide supports that extend automatically for a slant-front desk or secretary.

—Steve Zanki, Long Beach, Calif.

... a router with an offset collet.

—Homer Lindsay, Greenwich, Conn.

... a two-wing wheel cutter for toy wheels.

—Randy Dehes, Chandler, Ariz.

... an instruction manual for a Porter Cable Speedmatic type K-88C radial-arm saw.

—Kenneth King Jr., Greenwood, Miss.

... information on Shopmate 10-in. radial-arm saw.

—Karle Meyer, San Diego, Calif.

... information and parts for a Parlec 12-36 lathe manufactured by the Universal Tool Co., of Hawthorne, Calif.

—Steven Rogers, Santa Barbara, Calif.

... a two stage reduction gear for a Shopmate 4-in. beltsander model 2530T0.

—Delbert Graham, Ottumwa, Iowa

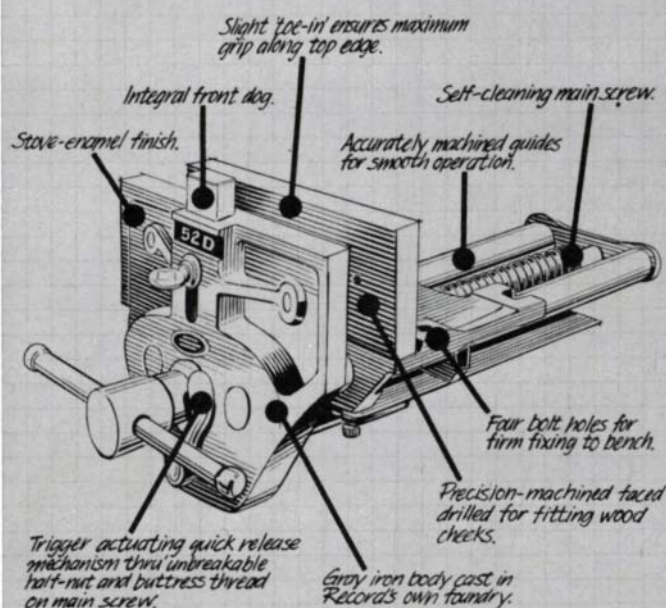
Supplies:

—Brass nameplates for furniture projects: Southern Arizona Metal Casting Inc., 3144 45th St., Tucson, Ariz. 85713.

—Used and antique furniture parts: Stantondales Furniture Restoration Supplies, 4012 Keltner, El Paso, Tex. 79904.

Send queries, comments and sources of supply to Q&A, Fine Woodworking, Box 355, Newtown, Conn. 06470.

WISE ADVICE points to Record



Record Tools are available from mail order houses, and stockists of fine quality tools.

For details of availability in USA write to:

RECORD RIDGWAY TOOLS LTD.
Parkway Works, Sheffield S9 3BL, UK.

Wood

Flitches to 50" wide...walnuts, cherries, oaks, maples, beeches, pines, ash, paulownia, fruits... over 25 species of soft and hardwoods.

Over 3000 outstanding pieces. All shapes and sizes in our showroom. Many unusual stump and root cuts... also, dimensional lumber.

We feature fine burls, feathers, curls, and clear grains, gathered, cut and dried at our own mill. Trees with outstanding characteristics, some 200 years and older.



Please send 50¢ for our pricelist



Willard Brothers Woodcutters

300 Basin Road
Trenton, NJ, 08619
Call (609) 890-1990



Woodworker's Delight!



SEND 50¢ FOR COMPLETE CATALOG



PAUL BUNYAN HARDWOOD CENTRE
3218 WIRETON ROAD
BLUE ISLAND, ILLINOIS 60406

LUMBER
VENEERS
TOOLS
FINISHES

BOOKS AND MORE!

FROM RAW WOOD TO RARE BEAUTY WITHOUT A RIPPLE

*Harry Morgan,
television star and
proud do-it-yourselfer.*

Bare wood. Just-stripped or unfinished wood. Even previously finished wood. There's no easier way to give them rare new beauty than with Carver Tripp stains and clear finishes.

The Rich Color You Want. Carver Tripp offers a wide selection of colors. Choose the color you're looking for from our color chips.
Smooth Uniform Coverage. Lap marks? Raising of the grain? Tripp helps guard against them with deep, even coverage in just one coat.
Fewer Brush Marks and Bubbles. For beautiful clarity and long-lasting protection, use Carver Tripp Liquid Plastic, or one of our other clear finishes.

Even a raw beginner can achieve real beauty with Carver Tripp. We'll provide you with the how-to help and quality products that make it happen.



Free "Complete Guide to Staining and Finishing." Take advantage of our know-how. Write for our free 16-page booklet: Carver Tripp, Dept. FW, P.O. Box 85063, San Diego, CA 92138.

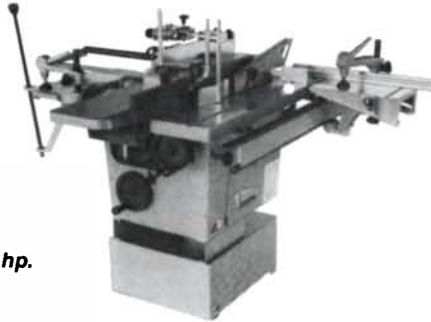


the LUREM COMBINATIONS!

Professional Quality Combination Woodworkers Occupying MINIMUM SPACE!

STANDARD FEATURES ON ALL MODELS

- Tilting Arbor Circular Saw
- Automatic Feed Thickness Planer
- Jointer
- Horizontal Drill-Mortiser
- Shaper-Spindle Moulder
- Sliding Carriage for Tenoning and Cross Cutting
- Knife Grinder and Setter for Planer Blades
- Heavy Duty Motor—1 phase, 220V., 2 hp.
- Floor Stand with Castors



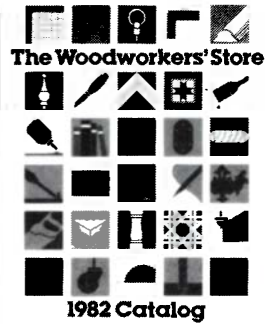
LUREM machines provide maximum capability in basic woodworking operations in compact single units which occupy a minimum of space. The LUREM machines are truly fine pieces of equipment, offering quick efficient changing of operating modes with clocklike precision and accuracy. They are ruggedly built from heavy castings for reliability, and will sustain hard and continuous operation with a minimum of maintenance. The following models are currently available: C.210B—Features 8" thickness planer/jointer and 10" circular saw, and C.260N—Features 10" thickness planer/jointer and 10" circular saw.

Send \$1.00 for postage and handling for additional literature.
Dealer inquiries invited.

INTERNATIONAL WOODWORKING EQUIPMENT CORPORATION

11665 Coley River Circle
Fountain Valley, California 92708

The Catalog



with inlays, veneers, hardwoods, mouldings, specialty hardware, finishing supplies, tools, books, plans, and over 3,000 products

created to help you

Please send me your new, fully illustrated, 112 page 1982 catalog. I enclose \$1.00 (for third class postage) or \$2.00 (for first class postage).



Dept. D1603
21801 Industrial Blvd.
Rogers, MN 55374

The Time is NOW for QUARTZ CLOCK MOVEMENTS!

SAVE On The THINLINE M88

QUARTZ CLOCK MOVEMENTS AT BALANCE WHEEL PRICES!

DIMENSIONS: 2-3/16 inches square x 5/8 inch thick. Center post diameter only 5/16 inch.
The works can be enclosed within a case less than 3/4 inch thick.
ACCURACY: Within ± 10 seconds per month.
BATTERY: Runs over a year on a standard "A" penlight battery, and much longer on the alkaline type.
SECOND HAND: If used, steps off the seconds at precise one second intervals.



Two Year Guarantee

All clock movement prices include hour & minute hands, nuts & hangers. Add .25 for second hands. Write for prices on larger quantities. Add \$2.00 for shipping to the 48 states.

Two Year Guarantee!

1-2 @ \$8.00 ea.
3-9 @ \$7.00 ea.
10-24 @ \$5.75 ea.

25 @ \$5.25* each

M81A

Near Pure Accuracy!
Proven Reliability!

- Accurate to ± 1 minute a year (59° F to 77° F)
- Movement size: 2-7/8 x 2-3/8 x 1-1/8 inches.
- Runs over a year on a standard "C" cell.

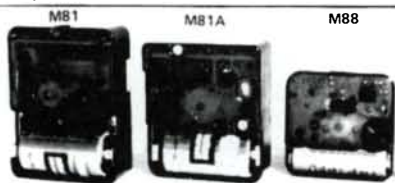


Reduced in Size

The M81A is a powerhouse! It converts the battery's electrical energy into torque to drive the hands more than twice as efficiently as a transistorized balance wheel movement. By any standard of comparison the M81A is the superlative movement.

Regular movement mounts on dials up to 7/16" thick. Also available with long center post to mount on slabs to 3/4" thick; Order No. M81A-LCP.

TWO YEAR GUARANTEE 25 @ \$5.25 Each



Reduced in size

ALL THREE MOVEMENTS FEATURE

- 4,194,304 Hz Quartz Crystal Oscillator
- Operational Range 14°F to 122°F
- Slide Switch, exact to the second setting

M81-Step Second Quartz Movement—Available with Long & Short Post. 2 YEAR GUARANTEE
25 @ \$5.25 each

LOW PRICES! M81 and M81 A
1-2 @ \$9.00 ea. 3-9 @ \$7.50 ea.
10-24 @ \$5.75 ea.

Any Size 25 @ \$5.25 ea.

NEW CATALOG NO. 181-C: Shows Quartz, Pendulum and Strike Movements, Hands, Dials, Numerals, etc. Cost—\$1.00 or FREE ON REQUEST WITH ORDER FOR MOVEMENTS.

Cas-Ker Co.

P.O. BOX 2347
DRAWER F
CINCINNATI, OHIO 45201
TEL: (513) 241-7075

Lifetime beauty for your fine wood finishing

WATCO®

The Original and Still the Best

DANISH OIL WOOD FINISH

LIKE MAGIC One easy application seals, primes, finishes, hardens, protects and beautifies. True, long-lasting elegance.

SAVE MONEY Doing your own wood finishing is a big money saver and with Watco, anyone can finish wood like an expert!

For complete information, fill in and mail the coupon today.

WATCO-DENNIS CORP., 1756-22nd St. Santa Monica, Ca. 90404, Dept. FW-32

Send free booklet "How to Beautifully Finish Wood."

Name _____
Street _____
City _____
State _____ Zip _____

MAKITA

Power Tool Headquarters



Model		List	Sale
1900B	3 1/4" Planer	\$132	\$ 89
1100	3 1/4" Planer	249	168
1805B	6 1/8" Planer	378	255
9900B	3" x 21" Dustless Belt Sander	182	123
9924B	3" x 24" Dustless Belt Sander	189	128
9401	4" x 24" Dustless Belt Sander	260	176
B04510	Finish Sander	72	49
B04520	Finish Sander	74	51
3608B	1 H.P. Router	113	77
3601B	1 1/4 H.P. Router	187	126
3600B	2 3/4 H.P. Router Plunge	281	190
3700B	Trimmer 1/2 H.P.	119	81
6510LVR	3/8" Rev. V.S. Drill	99	68
6010DW	3/8" Cordless Drill	124	84
5081DW	3 3/8" Cordless Saw	138	94
4200N	4 3/8" Circular Saw	125	84
4300BV	Var. Speed Jig Saw	175	118

WE MAINTAIN A LARGE INVENTORY OF MAKITA TOOLS IN STOCK FOR RAPID DELIVERY.

ALL TOOLS SHIPPED POSTAGE PAID
SEND \$1.00 FOR COMPLETE MAKITA CATALOG

Send Check or Money Order To:

SEVEN CORNERS ACE HDW. INC.
216 West 7th St. St. Paul, MN 55102
(612) 224-4859

The bit is...when you get our point, you've got the



EDGE.

At Morris Wood Tool, we believe woodworking enthusiasts deserve the same top performance from their cutting tools as the major manufacturers. So we've put together a twelve-piece, reasonably-priced set of our most-used drills boxed in a handsome solid mahogany case.

These American-crafted bits are made of the finest carbon tool steel available and are precision ground for clean, accurate drilling without 'skating' or splitting. Sizes range from 1/4" to

7/16" for a 3/4" drill chuck and from 1/2" to 1" to fit a 1/2" drill chuck.

Serious hobbyists will find our set of brad point drills is a good investment, because a bit of quality makes a big difference in woodworking projects.

\$78.00
including shipping



MORRIS WOOD TOOL Co., INC.

HWY. 11-E, P. O. BOX 249, MORRISTOWN, TN 37814 CALL 1-800-251-0994 IN TN (615) 586-0110

FOREDOM®

MINIATURE POWER TOOLS AND ACCESSORIES

You can choose from hundreds of steel cutters, abrasive points, buffs, sanding drums, dozens of other special tools for operations like these:



1/8" and 3/32" diameter shanks

Birds, ships, furniture, woodcarving of every type is faster, easier with Foredom. Perform the most intricate operations with finest professional results. Don't settle for less!



Powerful motors,
3 ft. flexible
shaft

15 different
handpieces
available

See your dealer or send now for FREE Catalog 280 HP

Name _____

Street _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

FOREDOM®
THE FOREDOM ELECTRIC COMPANY
Bethel, CT 06801 • 203-792-8622

A sharpening stone that gives the edge to all your cutting tools.

Garrett Wade has Japanese water sharpening stones that give a mirror-finish edge to any kind of cutting blade.

They are fast cutting stones that use water, not oil, and make an often tiresome job easier. They come in three grades—Coarse, Finishing, and Fine Finishing—that will let you sharpen everything from chisels and planing blades, to the keenest knives.

Garrett Wade also offers a magnetic angle indicator, that quickly shows you when you have the angle you want when you're honing.

Fine cutting tools are only as good as the edge you give them. You can get this edge from the Garrett Wade Japanese sharpening stones.



Garrett Wade Co., Dept. 51

161 6th Avenue, N.Y., N.Y. 10013

Send the tools indicated and a free Introductory Catalog. (If the order totals \$15.00 or more, you will receive a free copy of 212-page Main Catalog.)

Coarse @ \$9.10 p.p.d. Finishing @ \$9.90 p.p.d.

Fine Finishing @ \$18.50 p.p.d.

Magnetic angle indicator @ \$7.50 p.p.d.

Send your 212-page catalog of woodworking tools, machinery and accessories. Enclosed is \$3.

Check/Money Order enclosed.

Visa/Master Charge/American Express.

Card No. _____

Expires _____

Name _____

Address _____

City _____

State _____

Zip _____

ON ROUTER NAMECHANGES AND REAPPEARING RUSSIAN PLYWOOD

The hand-held electric router, which was exotic ten years ago, is becoming a favorite tool. Even the U.S. Bureau of the Census has noticed: its computers have revealed that the router is now the third most commonly owned power tool, behind drills and saws. Not surprisingly, router manufacturers are doing a brisk business and no small amount of shuffling as their marketing people discover just who buys the machines and why. At last count, there were eight U.S. companies making routers, three Japanese firms exporting them here and one European company making plans to sell its popular plunge-base router on this side of the Atlantic.

Two lines of routers will soon undergo name changes. Rockwell's power handtool division was sold to a holding company which will begin marketing all of its hand power tools under an old name, Porter Cable. The routers will retain the same model range and approximate price. Stanley's electric tool division has been bought by Bosch Powertool Corp., a German firm, and its routers will appear under that name. But don't rush out and expect to find a router in Bosch's blue trademark color; until the Stanley units meet the Bosch standard for double insulation, they will be sold as "generic routers" with no brand name at all. Stanley says it will satisfy the insulation standards sometime this year with all of its routers carrying the Bosch label by 1983. At least one American router has disappeared from the market. When Benchmark bought McGraw-Edison's tool division, it decided to drop that firm's router because it wasn't double-insulated.

U.S. manufacturers are worried about competition from Japan, particularly from Makita's line of plunge-base routers that are gaining popularity because of their versatility. Two other Japanese firms, Hitachi and Ryobe, are less in evidence but are still proving worrisome in a rapidly growing market. Elu, a German firm, is looking for motors that are compatible with U.S. electric systems so it can market a plunge-base router here. Elu may have routers for sale in the United States in about two years, according to a company official.

Seldom do the distant events of international politics invade the woodshop, but that's what happened two years ago when longshoremens protesting the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan refused to unload Russian shipments of Baltic birch plywood at eastern U.S. ports. The millimeter-ply board, sought for drawer and carcass stock, was in short supply in some parts of the country until June 1981, when courts ordered the longshoremens to resume unloading. Since the protest has ended, supplies have slowly gotten back to normal but nobody knows how long they'll stay that way.

Finland exports a similar plywood but it isn't as readily available to buyers of small amounts. For information on purchasing any amount of Russian plywood, contact Allied International, Box 56, Charles Town, Mass. 02129. If you want more information about plywood from Finland, contact Plywood and Door Manufacturers Corp., 1435 Morris Ave., Union, N.J. 07083.

—Paul Bertorelli

THE PROBLEM SOLVERS

Mitchell's Flexible, Abrasive Cord's & Tapes



Excellent for removing varnishes and paint from grooved areas of chair legs, spreaders, spindles and table legs.

Mitchell's flexible cords and tapes are impregnated with aluminum oxide or silicon carbide abrasives. They can be used on metal, plastic, or wood to deburr, grind, polish, and finish those hard-to-reach holes, slots, grooves and curved surfaces. A must for finishing work.

INTRODUCTORY HOME SHOP SPECIAL

3 sample spools of aluminum oxide tapes and cords. Approx. 30' each. *52 (round), *53 (round), *56 (flat)

SEND TODAY — Only \$10.00 ppd.

DISPLAY CARD with 13 samples \$1.00 Free with Order

E.C. MITCHELL CO. INC.

P.O. Drawer 607, Dept. FW3
Middleton, MA 01949-0907

Do-it-Yourself WOODWORKERS

Build Restore Refinish

Here's everything you need



104 page Catalog

Fine wood, veneer inlays, hardware tools, finishes, cane upholstery, clock kits, books, plans

PARTIAL CONTENTS: 14 kinds cabinet & furniture woods, 79 veneers 3-ft. lengths, 11 fancy burl & crotch, 19 flexible veneers to 36" wide x 8 ft., 54 carving blocks, 118 chisels & carving tools, 76 assembled inlays, 39 clamps, 72 lamp parts, 73 wood picture kits, 500 plans, 96 how-to books. Period hdwe., sliding, revolving hdwe. Cane, reed, wood finishes, pic. framing, coffee mill kit, etc. Over 2,000 hard-to-find products in new 104-page Woodworker Catalog!

TEAR OUT AD. MAIL TODAY.

CONSTANTINE Est. 1812
2065 Eastchester Rd., Bronx, N.Y. 10461

- Send new Woodworker Catalog. \$1 enclosed.
 Also \$2.50 for "Creative Veneer Craft" how-to manual. Simple knife-cutting techniques, projects & 35 patterns for making decorative veneer designs. Perfect catalog supplement.

Name _____

Address _____

Zip _____



Sterling Hardwoods, Inc.

Quality, Kiln-dried Lumber

Large inventory of native and exotic hardwoods and softwoods. Wood for furniture, flooring, paneling, carving and turning. Custom millwork. Thicknesses from 1" to 4".

We specialize in bird's-eye and curly maple.

Please send self-addressed, stamped envelope for pricelist.

412 Pine Street
Burlington, VT 05401
802-862-0186

KLAMP-KIT®

14" JAW LENGTH — JAWS OPEN TO 10"



DO-IT-YOURSELF KIT INCLUDES

- 2 3/8"-12 Acme threaded rods • 2 tension pins
- 4 specially threaded pivot nuts
- Easy to follow instructions for making and assembling the jaws and handles from your wood.

ONLY \$850 SATISFACTION GUARANTEED

ppd. To order, send \$8.50 per kit, or send 75¢ for instruction brochure to:

THE ROCKLEDGE CO., INC.
Box 56, Dept. F5 Milwaukee, WI 53201

**Build them in your shop!
Stacking Bookcase**



Protect your valuable books in this bookcase you build with stacking shelves and glass doors that swing up and slide back.

Order
◀ Plan 004
\$14.00

**Adjustable
Bookstand**

Display your favorite book (Bible, dictionary, encyclopedia, etc.). Stand adjusts for sitting or standing, has adjustable lamp.

Order Plan 009 — \$12.00 ▶

All plans have easy to follow illustrated steps. Can be made from any wood. No special moldings or hardware required.

Send check or money order to:

About Time Plans, Dept. F3-2C
7707 Aurora N. / Seattle, WA 98103

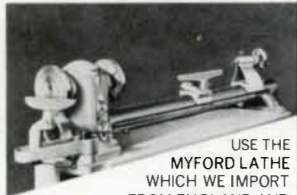


WOODTURNERS

TWO-DAY INTENSIVE WORKSHOPS

for beginning and experienced turners. Offered throughout the year, each with a maximum of two students. Cutting techniques emphasized for bowl and spindle turning. Hands-on practice in sharpening, turning, and finishing.

SORBY TOOLS unhandled with ferrule included 6-IN-1 CHUCK available for all lathes DOUBLE STICK TAPE INFORMATION ON TOOL SELECTION, sharpening and other items of interest.



USE THE MYFORD LATHE WHICH WE IMPORT FROM ENGLAND AND STOCK FOR SALE

\$1 FOR ALL BROCHURES. WORKSHOP ONLY: 35¢ STAMPS
RUSS ZIMMERMAN, RFD 3, BOX 59
PUTNEY, VERMONT 05346

**Your home workshop
can PAY OFF
BIG!**



This One Low-Cost Power Tool—
**SAWS to desired Width...
PLANES to desired Thickness...
MOLDS all popular Patterns...**

All at once or separately. . . All By Power Feed!

**TRY THE BELSAW
IN YOUR OWN SHOP
30 DAY FREE
TRIAL OFFER**

Only 3-in-1-Workshop Tool Of Its Kind!

From the Day It Arrives . . . the Belsaw will make and save you money. With shortages and inflation driving lumber prices sky-high, this versatile power tool easily pays for itself by quickly converting low cost rough lumber into high value finished stock. In just one pass turn out your own quarter-round, door and window stop, casing, tongue-and-groove . . . all popular patterns. Other Belsaw operators are making cases for grandfather clocks, furniture, picture frames, fencing, bee hives, bed slats, surveying stakes . . . all kinds of millwork.

**Built For Pros . . . Priced For
the Home Craftsmen**

. . . it is engineered and built to industrial standards, but factory-direct selling keeps the price low. Handles tough oak and walnut as easily as pine, and so simple to operate even beginners with no experience can use it.

**NO RISK 100%
Guarantee of Satisfaction**

"Try the Belsaw in your own shop for a full 30-Days and put it to work for you. Give it a thorough test and make it prove that it can do everything we say it will . . . use it as much as you want. Then if you are not completely satisfied, just send it back and we'll return every penny sent with your order. And YOU are the sole judge. There are no questions asked . . . there are no fine print 'use' charges. Our flat guarantee is that YOU must be 100% satisfied or you get your money back."

Does The Belsaw Pay? YOU BET!

READ WHAT OTHER BELSAW OWNERS SAY:

A Good Investment: "I believe that the Belsaw is the best investment I ever made. I've been a planer man for years and am now retired. The Belsaw has earned me over \$60,000 extra income in the past eleven years."

Robert Sawyer, Roseburg, Oregon

Pays For Itself: "I bought a batch of walnut in the rough, and after planing it on the Belsaw I figured up the money I had saved. It was enough to pay for two-thirds the cost of the Planer. It really does a good job."

R. S. Clark, Springfield, Ohio

More Than Expected: "This machine pays for itself by making money out of scrap boards. It is a very well built machine and I confess it is more than I expected for the price. It does everything you say it will."

Stephen Schultz, Orangeville, Penna.

. . . And Belsaw Is The Choice Of Professionals: "I recommend Belsaw's Planer-Molder-Saw as the most useful shop tool that any craftsman could own. We use ours every day in the WORKBENCH model shop, and couldn't get along without it."

JAY HEDDEN—Editor of WORKBENCH Magazine

**NO OBLIGATION and
NO SALESMAN Calls!**

**SEND FOR
FREE
BOOKLET**

BELSAW POWER TOOLS CO.
9464 Belsaw Building
6301 Equitable Road
Kansas City, Missouri 64120

YES, please send me the FREE Booklet that gives me complete facts about Belsaw's Planer-Molder-Saw and full details on how I can qualify for a 30-Day Free Trial right in my own shop. I understand there is No Obligation and that No salesman will call.

NAME _____
ADDRESS _____
CITY _____
STATE _____ ZIP _____

**Start Your Own Business
Earn Extra Income
Right at Home**

With just this one low cost power-feed machine in a corner of your garage or basement, you can set up a profitable business by supplying lumberyards, cabinetmakers, carpenters, remodelers, contractors and hobbyists in your area with custom-planed lumber, trim, molding . . . ALL of their millwork requirements. Supply picture molding to art shops, hardware and department stores, or sell direct to framing shops. All standard patterns in stock . . . custom knives ground to your design or sample.



**FREE
BOOKLET!**

**Get FREE Book
with facts and
full details . . . RUSH
COUPON TODAY!**

If coupon has been removed, just send postcard with name and address to:

BELSAW POWER TOOLS CO.
9464 Belsaw Building
6301 Equitable Road
Kansas City, MO 64120

wooden toy kits 10th Year
parts & patterns
Catalog Free
By 3rd Class Mail (5 week delivery)
\$1 For First Class Mail
Love-Built Toys, Inc.
Tahoe City, CA 95730

**MAKER'S MARK
BRANDING TOOL**
NOW! Brand your own name permanently on wood and leather handcrafts! Simple to use Long lasting. U/L approved electric handle. Brands full name. Guaranteed.
FREE ILLUSTRATED LITERATURE!
CRAFTMARK PRODUCTS, INC.
DEPT. F-3
P.O. BOX 6308, MARIETTA, GA. 30065

Books

The Woodwright's Shop: A Practical Guide to Traditional Woodcraft by Roy Underhill. *University of North Carolina Press, PO Box 2288, Chapel Hill, North Carolina, 27514 1981, Hardcover \$21, Softcover \$11.95.*

A patchwork quilt of old-time techniques, *The Woodwright's Shop* is a good introduction to methods of working green wood. Its author, Roy Underhill, has an unusual talent for clear and concise explanation; the book is full to the brim without bulging at the seams.

The first half of the book is thorough and interesting, with lots of useful information. There's a wonderful way to make a shaving horse, split and hewn from an oak log. A resourceful beginner could build a serviceable post-and-rung chair after reading Underhill's twelve pages on the subject. Making rakes, hay forks and dough bowls is also well presented.

The second half is not as strong: The chapters on blacksmithing and log and timber frame building are just tastes of complex subjects. Underhill on dovetailing and frame-and-panel construction offers little that you wouldn't find in any good book on joinery. And there is a great deal left unsaid about turning. That's the problem in trying to cover a broad field in a "practical guide." But *The Woodwright's Shop* does manage to be a very serviceable introduction.

No book can do everything, which is why bibliographies are so valuable. Underhill acknowledges the proliferation of new books on old methods, but he directs you only to the antique books from which many new ones derive, like Henry Mercer's *Ancient Carpenter's Tools* and George Sturt's *The Wheelwright's Shop*, which are fine general reading. But he does not refer the interested novice to those books that cover in depth

the various subjects he introduces: Ted Benson's excellent book, *Building the Timber Frame House* and John Alexander's *Make a Chair from a Tree*, for example. There is also *Country Woodcraft* by Drew Langsner, another potpourri, which overlaps Underhill in some respects but offers additional information and a different point of view. Underhill's scanty bibliography is a serious lapse.

The Woodwright's Shop relies on photographs for illustration but many of them are so poorly reproduced that their meaning is obscured—a disappointment in an otherwise attractive book. The writing style is easy and fun and peppered with several memorable anecdotes.

Underhill has also developed a television series for the Public Broadcasting System. Like the book, it is called *The Woodwright's Shop*, and it's worth a look. —Richard Starr

Woodworking: The New Wave by Dona Z. Meilach. *Crown Publishers, Inc., One Park Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10016, 1981. \$12.95 softcover, \$25.00 hardcover; 276 pp.*

If you are already interested in unusual woodworking—carved, laminated or bent constructions that may or may not be useful—the 684 photographs in Dona Meilach's latest book will show you what others who share your interests are up to. However, if you need to be convinced about the value of such stuff in the first place, you will have to look elsewhere: Meilach's copy offers only assertions, not analysis.

Meilach sums up her approach early on when she writes, "Whether a form and its elements are assembled with traditional joinery, carved from a block of wood or from a log, turned on a lathe, hand-tool-gouged or developed with a

FAIR PRICES RETURN!

Remember when good quality tools were available at fair prices? We're trying to bring back those memories of yesteryear by offering the very best famous name tools at truly fair prices.

WE OFFER:

- JORGENSEN CLAMPS
- SJOBERG BENCHES
- PRIMUS PLANES
- ABERNATHY VISES
- ULMIA VENEER TOOLS
- ARKANSAS STONES
- PLUS MANY MORE FINE TOOLS FROM AROUND THE WORLD

SEND \$1.00 FOR OUR NEW CATALOG

FAIR PRICE TOOL CO.

P.O. Box 627M

La Canada, California 91011

INCA-PRECISION SWISS STATIONARY POWER TOOLS

Don't just buy a woodworking machine,
buy what a machine can really do.

NEW,
THREE-WHEEL
BANDSAW
for wood,
plastics:
3-speed
Throat.....20"
Cutting Height...8"
HP 1.5



Industrial quality INCA Saws, Jointers, Planers, and Shapers all designed for precision production and priced for the perfectionist craftsmen, cabinetmakers and hobbyists.

INCA INCA PRECISION SWISS TOOLS **ANSON**

Send \$1.00 for postage and handling for INCA full line catalogue to:

ANSON INDUSTRIES INC.,

4115 San Fernando Rd., Glendale, CA 91204

(exclusive Western distributors

for all states West of the Mississippi River.)

Dealer inquiries invited

Make it a *Makita*



15 1/2" Planer
Model 2040

Free
shipping

- Extra smooth surfacing
- Sturdy, stable, cast-iron construction
- Quiet, vibration free operation
- Efficient, 29.5 ft./min.

\$1 each for Rockwell or Makita catalog

PRO SHOP

Dept. 3 PO Box 721
Elmhurst, IL 60126
312/832-3803
Call collect



Call Us Today!
414-248-1150



QUARTZ CLOCK MOVEMENTS

Made
in
U.S.A



Free
Catalog



Q-71 MINI-QUARTZ

Free Hands

Super LOW Prices

1-4: \$6.50 ea.

5-9: \$6.00 ea.

10-24: \$5.40 ea.

KLOCKIT

P.O. Box 629, Dept FW32
Lake Geneva, WI 53147

At last...

one single source for
the finest names in
furniture hardware!



THE DECORATIVE
HARDWARE STUDIO

180 KING STREET, CHAPPAQUA, NEW YORK 10514

Call (914) 238-5251 or write for
\$2.00 CATALOG. Refund with first order

HUNDREDS OF STYLES IN SOLID BRASS, LUCITE,
SPECIALTY FINISHES. LIMOGES PORCELAIN

A good miter
is hard to find.



Now you
know where
to look!

POOTATUCK CORPORATION

Box 18, Dept. FW2
Windsor, VT 05089 (603) 675-2105

Name _____

Address _____

City/State/Zip _____

DOMESTIC & FOREIGN HARDWOODS

Quality stock for
Cabinet Work

Most all sizes from
1" up to 4" in thickness

HARDWOODS

ASH—BASSWOOD
BIRCH—BUTTERNUT
CHERRY—CHESTNUT
EBONY—MAPLE—OAK
POPLAR—ROSEWOOD
TEAK—WALNUT
Also hardwood plywoods

SOFTWOODS

SUGAR PINE—CYPRESS
CEDAR—SPRUCE
DOUGLAS FIR etc.

MAURICE L. CONDON CO., INC.

248 Ferris Avenue
White Plains, N.Y. 10603
914-946-4111

Open Saturdays 8 AM until noon

OLSON

Saw Blades

Economy • Quality • Value

You could pay 50 to 100% more and not get better blades. Made from the finest steels with sharp, filed or precision ground teeth for accurate sawing, smooth finishes, and long life. For cutting wood, plastic, or metals in industrial, school, and home workshops.

Send for FREE
specification
and price sheets.



YES!

I am interested in more
information on these Olson Saw
Blades: Band saw (wood and
metal cutting), Coping Jig
 Saber Fret Scroll.

Name _____

Company _____

Street _____

City _____

State _____ Zip _____

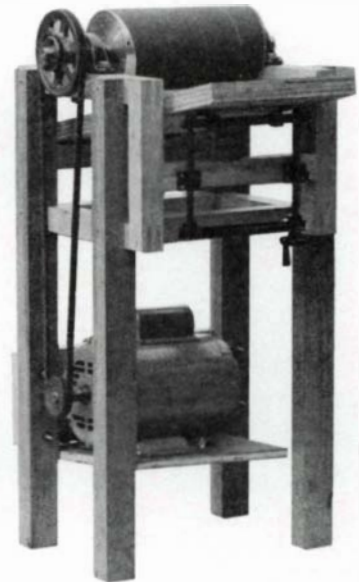


THE OLSON SAW COMPANY
A DIVISION OF BLACKSTONE INDUSTRIES, INC.
Bethel, CT 06801 • (203) 792-8622
FW

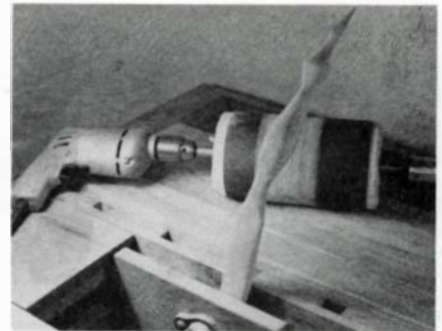
Sanding Tools

from

Kuster Woodworkers



DynaSand™ - The proven thickness
sander for fine dimensioning and
finishing. Kit includes construction
plans.



AirSander™ - The portable inflatable
drum sander, for shaping, sculpting
and delicate surfacing.

New!



Sand-Aid™ - The sanding lifesaver!
Make your own sleeves and belts.
Quickly! Easily! Economically! Comes
complete with electrically heated
press, 2-component glue and
instructions on how to make perfect
sleeves and belts.

Send for catalog and prices today!

Kuster Woodworkers

Box 34

Skillman, New Jersey 08558

chain saw or bandsaw is not important. The result must speak for itself. It must express the artist's thoughts, his originality, his ability to create a pleasing object. His touch is as individualistic as his signature at the bottom of a letter."

Personal expression seems to be the defining characteristic of Meilach's "new wave." With such logic she reduces everything to idiosyncrasy. The reader struggling to understand these pieces is given little help. Meilach's interviews with the makers yield only ethereal quotes and scant information about what these people do and how they do it. Concentrating on inspiration, Meilach dismisses the importance of those concrete things—materials, tools techniques and specific purposes, practical or otherwise—in which the creative process exists. The text is glib and superficial, the photos may enrage or inspire you.

—Roger Holmes

Patented Transitional and Metallic Planes in America 1827-1927 by Roger K. Smith. *North Village Publishing Co., available from Roger K. Smith, 1444 North Main Street, Lancaster, Mass. 01523, 1981. \$60 hardcover; 336 pp.*

The American Cabinetmaker's Plow Plane: Its Design and Improvement 1700-1900 by John A. Moody. *"The Tool Box," 8219 Old Petersburg Road, Evansville, Ind. 47711, 1981. \$34.50 postpaid; 248 pp.*

Tool collecting naturally leads to a search for knowledge. These two books offer excellent histories of the planes their authors have chosen to collect.

Iron-bodied planes, Smith's specialty, have a surprisingly long history, from at least the first century A.D., although

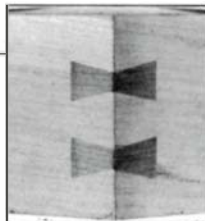
they were not made in quantity until early in the 19th century. Smith concentrates on the development of the modern cast-iron plane, from the first American patent issued in 1827 to Hazard Knowles, until 1927, by which time most of the planes had assumed the shapes and features familiar to us today. He traces such manufacturing and technical innovations as the cutter adjusting and holding mechanisms and the corrugated sole. He sketches the lives of the people behind the planes, including pioneers like Knowles and Charles West, the manufacturer Leonard Bailey, and the talented designers at the Stanley Rule and Level Company. Smith's book is exhaustive. Around 600 U.S. patents were issued for iron planes, and he has located specimens of the 200 or so that made it off the drawing board and into production. The book illustrates these with 300 photos and 41 color plates, as well as drawings.

Plow planes are the passion of John Moody. Their pedigree is also extensive. Ancient Egyptian panel construction implies some sort of plow plane for making grooves, although the earliest surviving examples of this plane-type date from the 16th century. One developmental chapter covers efforts to keep the outrigger fence parallel to the plane body, another examines combination planes, the aristocrats of the family. Moody is drawn to the embellishments on many plow planes, but he rightly pinpoints the desire to do a job better, quicker and cheaper as the source of innovation. The last half of his book contains drawings, summary descriptions and specifications of all the patent documents relating to plow-plane improvements in both the United States and Britain.

Smith and Moody have both published their books privately. Thus, they are expensive but well worth the money for the serious collector or student of rhykenology.

—Roger Holmes

THE JOINT AT RIGHT IS A DOVETAIL SPLINED MITER JOINT, BEAUTIFUL, SYMMETRICAL, STRONG.



The set of tools pictured below is precision built to enable craftsman and hobbyist alike to make the joint with consummate accuracy. With a set of my tools and your basic shop tools, you can make perfect triangles, squares and rectangles, pentagons, hexagons, and octagons. Use it to make aprons for polygonal tables, fancy trays and picture frames, drawers up to 9" deep, beautiful boxes of every size and shape. Set up from one shape to another takes about a minute. These are not cheap toys. The tool on the left makes cutting the grooves a snap and with the tool on the right you can cut perfect splines quickly and safely. I guarantee them to work as well for you as they do for me.



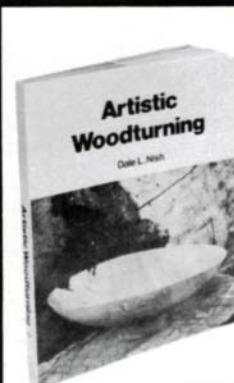
"Beautifully simple concept."

"Well-constructed."

For more information send \$2.50 (deductible from purchase price) for a copy of the Owner's Manual, or send \$148.95 by check, Money Order, VISA, or MasterCard (Va. residents add 4% sales tax) to:

Joseph O. Vernon
209 Lyons Ave.
Tazewell, Va. 24651

I pay the freight within the Continental U.S.



Artistic Woodturning "is the first book in the field that is written for the advanced latheman but is so clearly written (with 720 step-by-step photos) that even a novice can easily follow the instructions and produce extraordinary results. If you don't grin with joy while you first flip through the 255 pages, I'll eat my hat!" *Reviewed in Leichtung Fine Tool Catalog.*

Send \$19.95 for clothbound or \$15.95 for paperback to:



Brigham Young University Press
205 UPB/948, Provo UT 84602

EXTRAORDINARY VENEERS

Part of being your best source for hardwood veneers is **consistency**. Each order must be equally the highest quality obtainable, always full, long lengths chosen from a large, carefully maintained inventory including thick veneers, burls and core veneers. No surprises or disappointments. Send \$1.00 for our fully descriptive catalog.

The other part of being the best source is to make available veneers that are considered unobtainable. The woods are sometimes of remarkable quality or sometimes exhibit a rare unnatural occurrence figure which makes it **outstanding**. Samples of extraordinary veneers are available on request.

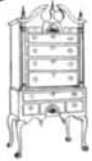
Come See Us At EXCELLENCE IN WOODWORKING
May 14-16 at Los Angeles

Remember us -
We're the
vener
specialists!



WOOD SHED

1807 Elmwood Ave., Dept. 15
Buffalo, NY 14207-2492
Telephone 716.876.4720



FURNITURE RESTORATION

Big Money In Small Business

At home or in shop • Spare time, full-time • Men or women • Complete training, no experience necessary • Simple, fast, safe, fun • Earn \$500-1,000 per day • Financing available

Ask about our **SPECIAL INTRODUCTORY OFFER**
Stripping — Repairing — Refinishing
Mirror Resilvering

Free Booklet: **MINUTEMAN, INC.**
130 E. Madison St., Waterloo, WI 53594
Send \$1.00 for postage and handling

BUILD IT YOURSELF BETTER AND CHEAPER

WOODEN TOYS - ACCENT FURNITURE
PLAQUES - PUZZLES - BIRD HOUSES
PLANTERS - LAWN ITEMS - BOOKS



HUNDREDS OF ITEMS
FREE OFFER WITH CATALOG
FULL SIZE BLUEPRINT PATTERNS & BOOKS
CATALOG \$1.00 (REFUNDABLE) — 1982 Edition
DESIGN GROUP • Box 514-E • Miller Place, N.Y. 11764

NATIVE AMERICAN HARDWOODS



WALNUT, BUTTERNUT, CHERRY
CURLY & BIRDSEYE MAPLE
Most other Domestic Woods

- EXTRA WIDE/EXTRA THICK STOCK
- SPALTED WOODS
- TURNING & SCULPTING BLOCKS
- SOLID SQUARES

Cabinet & Economy Grade Lumber
Stock for Woodwork Flooring, Paneling

NO MINIMUM—MAIL & FREIGHT SHIPMENT
DETAILED LISTING 50¢ (716) 942-6631

D.A. BUCKLEY, RI, W. VALLEY, N.Y. 14171

MAKE OUR SANDERS UNDER YOUR NAME

Table Stroke-Side Stroke-String



We furnish License, Forms,

© Plans, & Know-How.

FOR DETAILS SEND

\$1.00 & YOUR CARD

4 MODELS \$585-\$685, Deluxe \$750-\$900/Kits avail.

Sand 38" x 6' & 8' Ball Bearing-Motor Extra

Free Literature
McCALL HOUSE, Box 1950-L
Lenoir, NC 28645 (704-758-1991)

HUNDREDS OF NEW WORKSHOP PLANS

Including Furniture, Toys & Much More!

NAME _____

ADDRESS _____

CITY _____ STATE _____ ZIP _____

SEND \$1.00 FOR CATALOG & VALUABLE DISCOUNT COUPONS

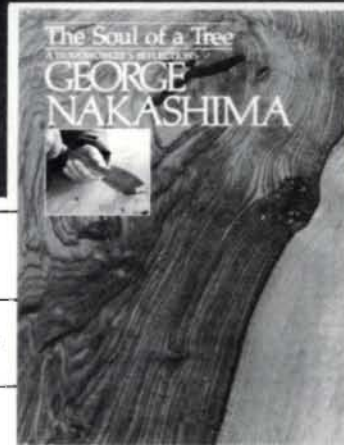
ROYAL PLANS Dept. RPC1487, 137 Walsh Ave.,
Box 4305, New Windsor, NY 12550

SATISFACTION GUARANTEED

GEORGE NAKASHIMA



The creator of the Conoid Chair shares his experiences, techniques, and above all, his devotion to giving noble trees a second life as furniture in **THE SOUL OF A TREE, A Woodworker's Reflections**
224 pages; 106 color plates; 114 black-and-white plates and drawings.



\$52.00

Prices subject to change without notice
(Add \$1.00 handling plus sales tax in New York for mail orders.)

Available at bookstores or from:

KODANSHA INTERNATIONAL

10 East 53rd St.
New York, NY 10022

WOODWORKS A + B Epoxy Putty: It can be sanded, sawed, planed, drilled, tapped, machined, routed, molded and chiseled.



YOU CAN EVEN WHITTLE IT.

Try that with your canned wood putty.

EACH BOX CONTAINS A & B BARS



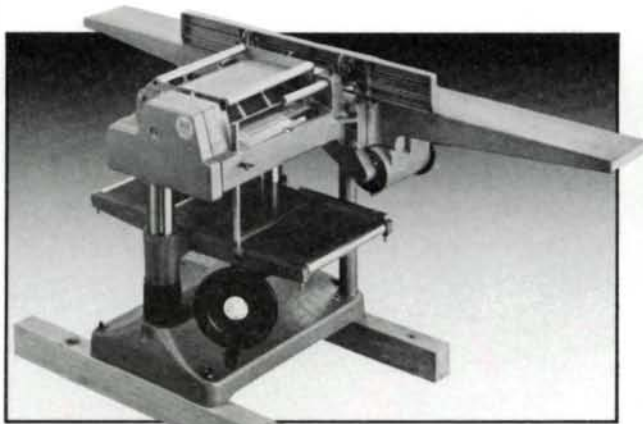
WOODWORKS is a revolutionary new A + B epoxy putty. Just knead together equal portions until the color becomes uniform (stain may be added while mixing). It hardens in about 2 hours and will not shrink, not even a little bit. Clean up is easy with soap and water. As for shelf life, we've had a package open for 5 years and WOODWORKS hasn't dried up yet.

Introductory offer—\$3.50 for 112.5 gram package (includes postage and handling). Or send SASE for free information. California residents add 6% sales tax.

APCO

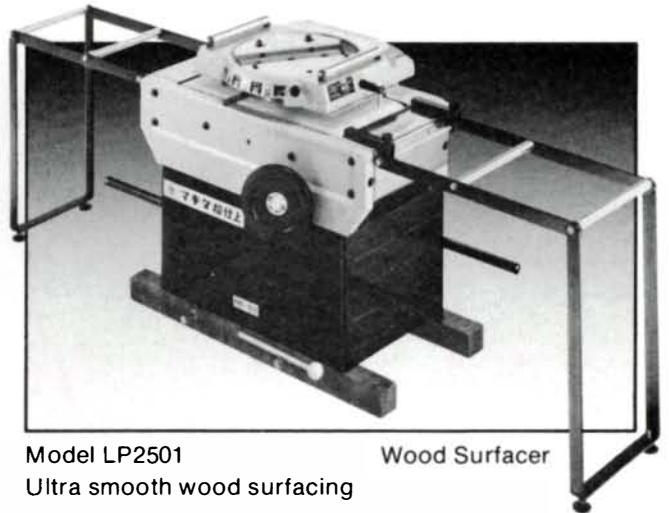
APPLIED PLASTICS CO. INC. • 612 E. Franklin Avenue, Dept. WB • El Segundo CA 90245

QUALITY PRODUCTS



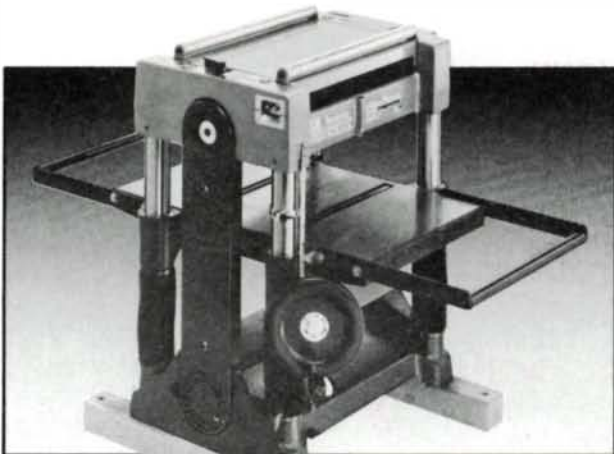
Model 2030
It planes, It produces,
It travels

12" Planer-Jointer



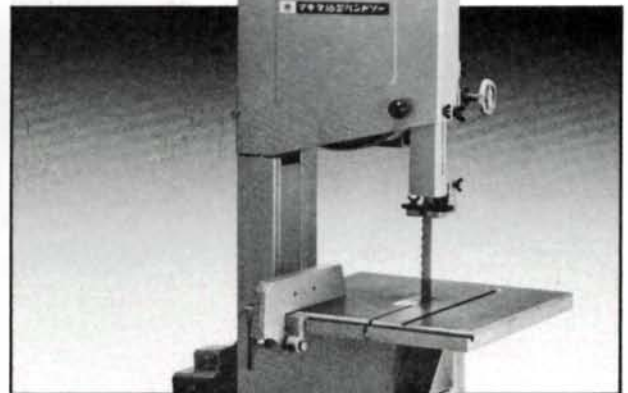
Model LP2501
Ultra smooth wood surfacing

Wood Surfer



Model 2040
15" Planing in a
single pass

15 1/8" Planer



Model 2116
It cuts
12" thick wood

Band Saw

● UNBEATABLE SERVICE ● FAST DELIVERY ● REASONABLY PRICED

Fine woodworkers like you, around the world, have made us what we are today. For over 60 years Makita has been offering you labor, time and money saving power tools.

To insure that all of your needs are met, Makita backs its high quality tools with excellent service. At Makita we are deeply imbued with the service spirit. Providing you with solid support in the form of product service, delivery and all around tool consultation.

At Makita, service is the name of our game. With seven distribution and service centers, four factory service centers and over 120 authorized service

centers located throughout the United States, Makita is strategically equipped to provide tool repairs and fast delivery of replacement parts and accessories. The awesome excellence of Makita products and service form a winning combination. Makita—quality tools, fast delivery, and unbeatable service.

Makita U.S.A. INC.

12930 E. Alondra Blvd., Cerritos, California 90701 (213) 926-0611

FROM CRATEWOOD TO CRADLE

BY RICK LIFTIG

I had a hard time believing the wood was free. "You made that from cratewood?" I asked as I admired Sam's new pistol case. "Yep, and all the bikes come packed in it. This stuff is just like mahogany."

The Honda Motorcycle Company has graciously decided to crate its goodies in Asia's most available wood, which happens to be lauan from the Philippines. This is rough-cut cratewood, but some of it is very dense hardwood. The local Honda shop was glad to see the wood being used rather than being trucked to the dump.

Though the wood intrigued me, a use for it evaded me for a while. I was still in school and had no room for a shop, let alone time to think about woodworking. One year later, with school behind me, I realized that I owed a folk-singing friend a wedding present. I'd built dulcimers in the past using only hand tools, and figured that making him one would be the perfect gift. I started thinking about it. . . .

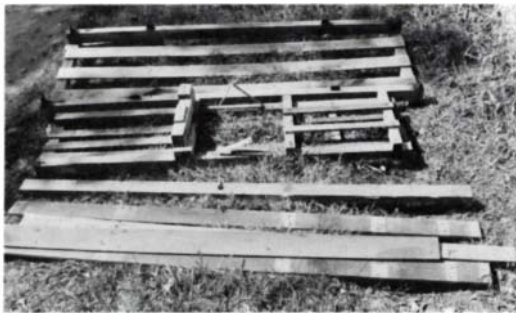
Procastination, however, has a subtle way of altering plans. One year later I still owed the wedding present, but the dulcimer idea had to be scrapped in favor of a cradle. Eagerly, I started tearing apart Honda crate after Honda crate, giving no thought to what I would use for a shop, tools or bench. When I finally thought of those three items, I realized that this could become a very expensive belated gift.

I got together the various trade bibles and chose every tool that I could ever need. I checked prices on power tools, combination tools, and every other tool. When the pipe dreams cleared, I once again realized I wasn't wealthy—that was the reason I was using cratewood in the first place.

In one area I didn't spare the cash: that was with books. I read voraciously about cabinetmaking, tools and design before I finally started cutting. This turned out to be the best investment I could have made. A book on joinery really got me going. It looked so simple that at first the cradle was going to be all mitered dovetail (hah!). After practicing a few through-dovetails with hand tools I thought that I'd better buy a router instead. The shop then consisted of a 7-ft. x 15-ft. porch, a Black and Decker workmate, a set of chisels, an old plane in need of a chipbreaker, a few clamps and a backsaw. The router was my only major tool purchase for the project.

It took me about an hour to disassemble each crate and remove the nails and hardware. Only about one quarter of the wood was usable. There was also the problem of arriving at the Honda shop ten minutes after the weekly dump run had been made, but through perseverance

I garnered a respectable pile of lauan, mostly $\frac{3}{8}$ in. to $\frac{1}{2}$ in. in thickness and 3 in. to 4 in. wide. All smoothing and jointing had to be done with my plane, but after much frustration, I found an inexpensive scrub plane that cut my work in half. Finally the boards had been planed, squared, jointed, glued and planed again to thickness. I began to appreciate the invention of electrically powered jointers and thickness planers. Each board though, taught me something new about the properties of wood and the hand tools that I was using. I could never have gotten the same ex-

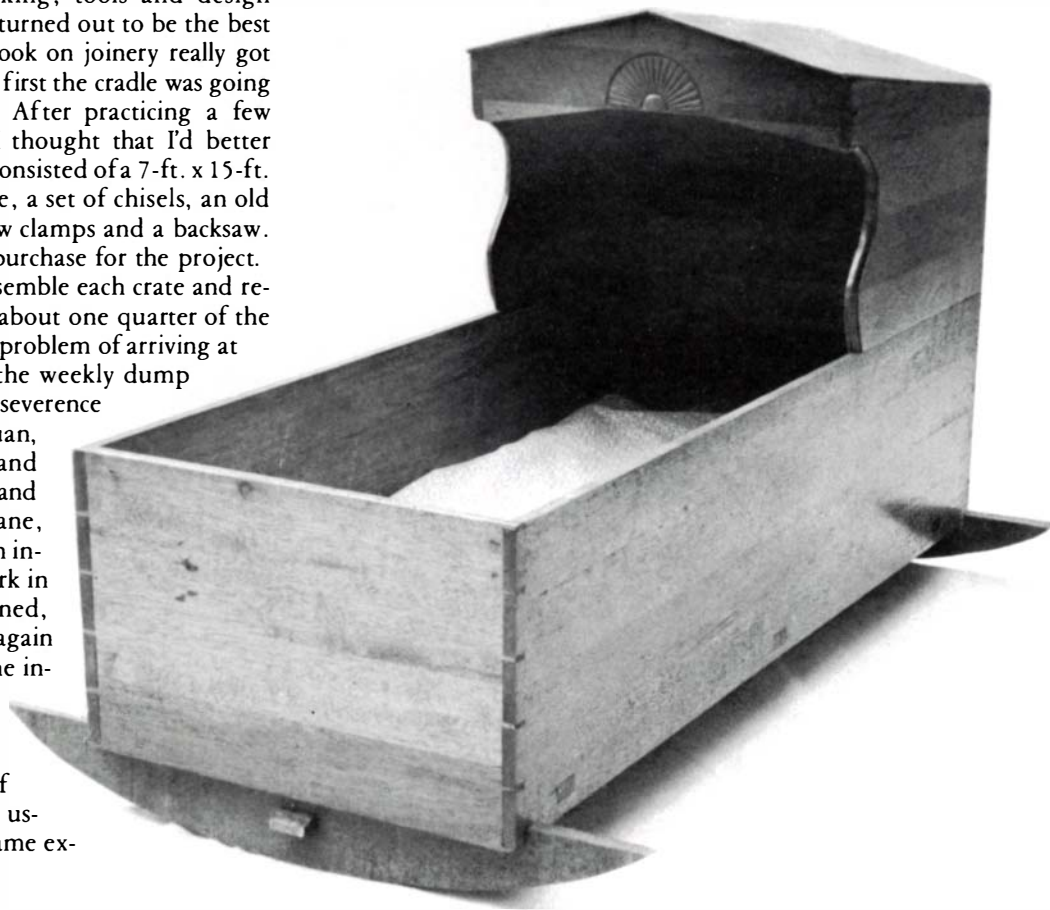


perience using machines. I was all set for my new router to dovetail the whole thing together in a matter of minutes, but the commercial dovetail jig did not enjoy $\frac{3}{8}$ -in. stock. Out of desperation, I started practicing hand dovetails again and found that each joint was getting better. At the first properly made practice joint, I let out a whoop and started a joint on the cradle. I learned how to hide many mistakes that night.

After a four-month gestation, oblivious to its humble beginnings as a Honda crate, a handsome cradle stared back at me. It had its faults, but in no way could those little mistakes reduce my grin. I applied a tung-oil finish, delivered the cradle, and then faced the final test. . . the baby was rocked asleep in moments.

By completing an ambitious project with few power tools I learned a lot about woodworking. I realize now which power tools will be useful to me and that most of the hand tools I originally drooled over would have been little use if I couldn't use the basic ones well. The books were my life preserver and teacher. Read, read, read, make your mistakes, get discouraged and then learn. Jump in and swim. Even if you ruin some of your stock on the way, remember, it's only cratewood. □

Rick Liftig is a dentist living in Northfield, Conn. He's built himself a sturdy workbench and is just about to buy either a table saw or a car. Photos by the author. Fine Woodworking buys readers' adventures. Suitable length is 1,500 words or less—up to six typed pages, double spaced. Please include negatives with photographs.



If you're searching for QUALITY and VALUE.... WE HAVE THE ANSWER!

WE ARE THE LARGEST SPECIALTY TOOL RETAILER IN NORTHERN CALIFORNIA WITH OUR THREE LOCATIONS. WE CARRY OVER 7000 ITEMS IN STOCK AT ALL TIMES BRAND NAME DOMESTIC LINES AS WELL AS FINE IMPORT TOOLS. ALL AT INCREDIBLY LOW PRICES.

Makita

3/8" CORDLESS DRILL, REVERSIBLE SCREWDRIVER KIT MODEL 4010DM



One hour fast charge with removable battery most powerful cordless available. Comes with battery, charger, Phillips bit. Weighs only 2.4 lbs. LIST: \$ 124.00

OUR PRICE **79⁹⁹**

DRYWALL SCREWDRIVERS

Models: 6800 DBV & 6801 DBV

Variable speed, reversing. Simple, positive depth adjustment. Well balanced, weighs 3.3 lbs. Powerful 3.5 amp ball bearing motor. 6800 DBV has speed range of 0-2500 RPM, 6801 DBV has 0-4000 RPM. Metal hp clip. Comes with insert bit and magnetic bit holder.

LIST: \$ 130.00

OUR PRICE **85⁹⁹**



FINISHING SANDER Model: BO 4510

Good for heavy duty applications of cabinet shops, auto body shops etc. Light weight 2.4 lb. Powerful 1.8 amp motor turns 12,000 RPM. Orbital action. All ball bearing construction.

LIST: \$ 72.00

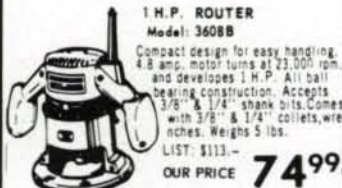
OUR PRICE **44⁹⁹**

4" X 24" BELT SANDER Model: 9401

8.5 amp powerful motor. 1148 ft/min. Perfect for flush-along-side sanding. High efficiency dust collector.

LIST: \$ 260.00

OUR PRICE **179⁹⁹**



1 H.P. ROUTER Model: 3608B

Compact design for easy handling. 4.8 amp motor turns at 23,000 rpm and develops 1 H.P. All ball bearing construction. Accepts 3/8" & 1/4" shank bits. Comes with 3/8" & 1/4" collets, wrenches. Weighs 5 lbs.

LIST: \$ 113.00

OUR PRICE **74⁹⁹**



2 3/4 H.P. ROUTER Model: 3600 B

Makita's best. Super duty plunge type production router. Powerful 12 amp motor turns at 22,000rpm. All precision ball bearing. Quick change of cutting depth between 0-5/8". Accepts 1/2", 3/8", 1/4" shank bits. Comes with 1/2", 3/8", 1/4" collets, wrenches, guides are optional. (All three pc. set add \$ 18.50.)

LIST: \$ 281.00

OUR PRICE **189⁸⁹**

10" MITER SAWS



\$ 249.99

Best powered miter saws on market. Electric brakes. Model 2400 B accepts vise and holder set and comes with dust bag. LIST: \$ 324.00

\$ 209.99

Model: 2401 B has positive stops at 45 & 90°. LIST: \$ 298.00

\$ 349.99

Model LS 1400 cuts 4 1/2" deep. Electric brake. Accepts vise and holder set. LIST: \$ 489.00 (Vise and holder set add \$ 28.00)

OUR PRICE **349.99**

4" SANDER GRINDER Model 9501 B KIT

Compact, light weight. Industrial duty. Powerful 3.5 amp motor turns at 10,000 RPM for high efficiency. Weighs only 4 lbs. Comes with grinding wheel, guard, flange, lock nuts, rubber pad, sanding disk, wrenches. (side handle add \$ 2.80, sanding disks \$.69/each, cup brush \$ 8.00, metal cut-off wheel \$ 2.40, tile, concrete cutting blade \$ 59.00)

LIST: \$ 108.00

OUR PRICE **69⁹⁹**

3 1/2" PLANER Model: 1900 B

Ideal for door and cabinet installations. 4 amp ball bearing motor turns at 15,000 rpm. 3 1/2" blade capable of chamfer cuts using the unique center groove in sole plate. Weighs only 5.5 lbs. Comes with blade gauge, sharpening holder, socket wrench, guide rule, blades. (Carbide blades add \$ 37.00) LIST: \$ 132.00

OUR PRICE **89⁹⁹**

6 1/8" PLANER Model: 1805

World's widest cut, World's biggest planer. Bevel planing 0 - 45 with large side rule. Ideal for stationary planing with optional stand. Powerful 8.5 amp motor turns at 15,000 rpm. Weighs 17.5 lbs. Comes with guide rule, wooden carrying case, sharpening holder, blade gauge, wrench, blades. (Carbide blades add \$ 85.00 Stand add \$ 32.00) LIST: \$ 378.00

OUR PRICE **269⁹⁹**

PLANER - JOINER Model: 2030

Compact design, 2 H.P. single phase 115 V. motor. 12" width, 6 1/2" depth planer. 6 1/2" joiner. Fully assembled, ready to run. Comes with blades, sharpening holder, spanner wrench. Weighs 275 lbs. LIST: \$ 1580.00

OUR PRICE **1389⁹⁹**

15 5/8" PLANER Model: 2040

Unit is fully assembled with 2 H.P. motor. Single phase, 115 V. 15 5/8" width, 7 5/8" deep cutting capacity. Weighs 54 lbs. Comes with blades, socket wrenches, wooden leveler. LIST: 1680.00

OUR PRICE **1249⁹⁹**

AEG Electric power tools from AEG-TELEFUNKEN

VARIABLE SPEED RECIPROCATING SAW RSK-540 E



Variable 2 range speed control. 0-1700 & 0-2400. Powerful 5 amp. motor is all precision ball bearing construction. Comes in a heavy duty steel carrying case with 8 assorted blades. LIST: \$ 170.00

OUR PRICE **129⁵⁰**

7 1/4" CIRCULAR SAW PC 70



A professional quality AEG saw. 12amps. 5800 rpm. Max depth of cut of 2 1/2" comes with 18 tooth carbide-tipped blade. LIST: \$ 146.00

OUR PRICE **109⁵⁰**

VARIABLE SPEED DRYWALL SCREWDRIVER



5 amps, interlocked reversing feature. Comes with 1/4" magnetic bit holder, locking collar & depth locator. Two models: SCR I E 0-2500rpm. SCR II E 0-4000rpm. LIST: \$ 131.00

OUR PRICE **99⁵⁰**

TOOLKRAFT

10" DELUXE RADIAL ARM SAW MODEL 4015



10" Radial Arm Saw designed for the do-it-yourself market. Powerful ball bearing motor develops 2 1/4 H.P. and features a high speed (15,800 R.P.M.) accessory shaft for decorative woodworking. Automatic braking action stops both blade and spindle in seconds. Shipping Weight: 130 lb List: 499.95

OUR PRICE **399⁵⁰**

10" DELUXE TABLE SAW MODEL 4122



Ground cast iron table for precision and durability. Built-in ball bearing motor develops 2 1/4 H.P. Self-aligning rip fence locks from front and back with one motion. The two adjustable steel extensions provide up to 50" of table support. Shipping Weight: 140 lb.

List: 549.95

OUR PRICE **439⁵⁰**

MOTORIZED HIGH SPEED SHAPER MODEL 4256



It is equipped with a powerful one H.P. ball bearing high speed motor. It runs at 18,000 R.P.M. Ground cast iron table slotted for miter gauge. Cast iron fence with hard wood guides. Comes with stand as shown. Cutter height capacity 2". Shipping Weight 81 lb List: 339.95

OUR PRICE **279⁵⁰**

BOSCH Power Tools

ORBITAL ACTION JIG SAW (VARIABLE SPEED)



Model: 1578 Speed control maintains full power output even at lower speeds. Unique blade action control. Weighs only 5.5 lbs. LIST: \$ 215.00

OUR PRICE **159⁹⁹**

ORBITAL ACTION JIG SAW Model: 1580

Industrial duty. 3400 RPM. Powerful, all ball bearing motor. Unique blade motion control. Weighs only 5 lbs. LIST: 195.00

OUR PRICE **139⁹⁹**

Model: 1580 VS

Same tool as 1580 with variable speed control. List: 215.00

OUR PRICE **159⁹⁹**

San Francisco
285 S. Van Ness
S.F. CA 94103

San Bruno
1758 El Camino Real
San Bruno CA 94066

Oakland
1290 Powell St.
Emeryville, CA 94608

TEN PLUS TOOLS

WHERE PROFESSIONALS SAVE...

A WAREHOUSE OF QUALITY
HAND, POWER, AIR TOOLS AND MACHINERY

TO ORDER CALL:
(415) 552-4350 Ext. 201

OR SEND TO:
Ten Plus Tools Dept. WW-1
285 S. Van Ness
San Francisco, CA 94103

FREIGHT PREPAID
ON PURCHASES
OVER \$ 500.00
(Except Alaska & Hawaii)

Events

Events listings are free but restricted to workshops, fairs, lectures and exhibitions of direct interest to woodworkers. The next deadline is Mar. 5, for events beginning May 1 to July 15.

ARIZONA: Show—Arizona Woodcarver's Assoc., March 8-12. Valley National Bank Center, 241 N. Central, Phoenix.

ARKANSAS: Juried Art Fair—May 7-9 at Convention Center. Slides by March 31, fee \$45. Contact Don Kennett, R.R. #2, Box 324, Eureka Springs 72632.

CALIFORNIA: Juried Woodworking Exhibition—Open to residents of San Diego and Imperial counties. June 18-July 5. Slides by May 1. 22nd. District Agricultural Assoc. Fairgrounds. So. Cal. Exposition in Del Mar, (714) 755-1161. Excellence in Woodworking—May 14-16, Los Angeles Convention Center, trade show with seminars by Ian Kirby. Contact Melvin Park & Assoc., 600 Talcott Rd., Park Ridge, Ill. 60068. 4th annual wood conference, Berkeley campus, April 3-4, \$65. More info, 415-642-4111. Juried Craft Fair—Fort Mason Center, San Francisco. Trade, Aug. 12; public, Aug. 13-15. Apply by March 10, fee \$10. Write American Craft Enterprises, Box 10, New Paltz, N.Y. 12561.

CONNECTICUT: Seminars and Workshops—Mack Headley: "Colonial Woodworking," April 17-18; Bud Kronenberg: "Canadian Goose Carving," April 14-15; Stephen Hogbin: "Design for Woodworkers and Technology," March 27. Brookfield Craft Center, Box 122, Brookfield, 06804. Classes—Basic hand woodworking, 8 sessions beginning March 2; \$72. Farmington Valley Arts Center, PO Box 220, Avon Park, 06001.

FLORIDA: Juried Craft Competition—June 4-July 3. Slides by March 5; fee \$10. Contact

LeMoyné Center for the Visual Arts, 125 N. Gadsden St., Tallahassee, 32301. Design Competition—multipurpose furniture, May 15-July 4. Metropolitan Museum, 1212 Anastasia Ave., Coral Gables, 33134.

GEORGIA: Workshop—"Building the Wooden-Bodied Cabinetmaker's Plane," March 13, 20, 21; also classes through May, contact John McGe, 218 S. Boulevard, Carrollton, 30117. Classes—Ian Kirby on drawermaking, March 6-8; John Wermescher on marquetry, March 13-14; Bob Kelley on turning and lathe work, March 27, on shop jigs and routers, April 10 and on joinery, May 8-9; Wendell Castle on stack lamination and design, April 23-25. Highland Hardware, 1034 N. Highland Ave. NE, Atlanta, 30306.

ILLINOIS: Workshops—Woodcarving, May 17-21; Furniture Conservation, Aug. 2-5, by Wallace Gusler, Curator, Colonial Williamsburg. At Campbell Center, PO Box 66, Mt. Carroll, 61053. Juried Arts Festival—June 19-20, All media, apply by April 16. Fountain Square Arts Festival, 807 Davis St., Evanston, 60201.

INDIANA: Craft Exhibition—Feb. 28-April 4, Museum of Arts and Science, 411 S. Riverside Dr., Evansville, 47713.

KANSAS: Juried Crafts Exhibition—April 4-May 3, Topeka public library. Entry deadline March 14; fee \$10. Contact Larry D. Peters, 1515 W. 10th St., Topeka, 66604. Seminar—Wonderful world of woods, March 25-26. Wood science, selection of woods and marquetry. Fee \$40. Whitesitt Hall, Pittsburgh State University. Contact Duane Griffiths (316) 231-7000.

MAINE: Seminars—Saturdays in Feb. and March. Woodbutcher Tools, Shelter Institute Building, 38 Center St., Bath, 04530.

MARYLAND: Juried Craft Fair—April 16-18, Montgomery Fairgrounds. To enter write Deann Verdier, Sugarloaf Mt. Works, Ijamsville, 21754.

MASSACHUSETTS: Weekend seminars: Handtools, March 27; Windsor Chairmaking, Apr. 24-25; Ash Splint Basketry Workshop, May 8-9. National Invitational Furniture Exhibition, July 15-Sept. 11; Craft Fair—Wholesale May 14, retail May 15-16; Worcester Craft Center, 25 Sagamore Rd., Worcester, 01605. Exhibition—*Artists in Artisanry*, work by Boston University faculty, March 4 to April 23, Federal Reserve Bank Gallery, 600 Atlantic Ave., Boston.

MINNESOTA: Demonstration & Show—Minn. Woodcarvers Assoc., March 27-28. Eden Prairie Center, 8301 Flying Cloud Dr., Minneapolis.

NEBRASKA: Juried Exhibition of furniture and rugs, through March 10. Craftsmen's Gallery, 511 S. Eleventh, Omaha, 68102.

NEW HAMPSHIRE: Competitions for New England craftsmen, March 22-Apr. 28. University Art Galleries, U.N.H., Durham, 03824.

NEW YORK: Exhibition—burl and spalted wood vessels by the Lindquists, March 9-Apr. 10, Elements Gallery, 766 Madison Ave., NYC 10021. Rocking Furniture—antique and contemporary furniture, toys and art, through June at Gimbel's. Old Tools—"Historic Tools: Identification and Care," April 19, reg. by April 12. Fee \$10. Farmer's Museum, 314 E. Seneca St., Manlius, 13104. Northeast Craft Fair—Dutchess County Fairgrounds, Rhinebeck. Trade, June 22-23; public, June 25-27. A. C. E., Box 10, New Paltz, 12561. Arts & Crafts Festival—Sept. 3-6, deadline May 1. Write Rubinstein, Box 437B, Woodstock, 12498.

OHIO: Spray Finishing Workshop—sponsored by

HEGNER

MULTIMAX-2

World's First **UNIVERSAL PRECISION SAW**

VERSATILITY
unmatched
by any band saw

OPERATION
superior to any
jig or scroll saw

HEGNER SAWS CUT:
PRECISELY, RAPIDLY; EVERY Kind of Wood up to 2";
Plastics up to 1 1/2"; Non-Ferrous Metals up to 3/4"; Med.
Hard Steel up to 3/8"; Turning Radii as small as 0.02"; No
Relief Cuts necessary; No Finishing necessary.

HEGNER Saws mean QUALITY for Fun & Profit
(Model Polymax-3 also available)

For free Catalog write to:

AMI, Ltd. 2735 Tanager Dr., FW
WILMINGTON, DE 19808
Advanced Machinery Imports Phone 302-999-9233

HEGNER Saws are also displayed and demonstrated by our dealers below:

CALIFORNIA:
THE CUTTING EDGE
3871 Grand View Blvd., L.A., CA 90066 phone 213/390-9723
1836 Fourth St., BERKELEY, CA 94710 phone 415/548-6011

NEW YORK:
GARRETT-WADE COMPANY
161 Avenue of the Americas, N.Y., NY 10013 phone 212/695-3358

TEXAS
DALE WOODCRAFT & TOOL CENTER
12323 N. Central Expwy., DALLAS, TX 75243 phone 214/233-6949



Unicorn Universal WOODS Ltd.

SPECIALTY FOREIGN & DOMESTIC
HARDWOODS & SOFTWOODS
VENEERS

LUMBER FOR EVERY WOODWORKING APPLICATION

OVER 80 SPECIES AVAILABLE:

OLIVEWOOD • EBONY • BURLED LOGS • PERNAMBUCO
CORDIA • ROSEWOODS • CUBAN MAHOGANY • ENGLISH BROWN OAK

AIR DRIED & KILN DRIED FLITCH CUT LOGS
COMPREHENSIVE STOCK AVAILABLE FROM 1" TO 6"

WRITE FOR FREE PRICE LIST • MINIMUM MAIL ORDER \$100.00
137 JOHN ST., TORONTO, CANADA, M5V 2E4
416-977-3791

THE "SHAPER SHOP"

by **freud** USA

The "Shaper Shop" by Freud has been designed to satisfy the needs of today's woodworker. It will make many different moldings with one basic machine. Customized and built different models. The shaper set comes in two models—200 plus an optional router. S&S 21 through S&S 20. Just 100 lbs. weight, weighs and handles in a duffle bag and weighs 190 lbs. (case). S&S 21 through S&S 20 are optional and readily available from your Freud distributor.

With these items of excellent molding work can be produced. A variety of additional moldings is possible. For making the cutting process with the same work piece in a changed tool position. The set is designed for making 1/2" to 2" wide and 1/4" to 1" deep. All bearings are 5/16" dia. and feature a free side and spring the cutting edge.

The "Shaper Shop" can be used for molding, cutting and joining work. Perfectly with various tools.

For handling and safety always use fence if parts. Also available with that set about backs to different requirements.



WE STOCK ALL FREUD CUTTERS SAW BLADES, ROUTER CUTTERS, & SHAPER CUTTERS CALL OR WRITE FOR OUR COMP. PRICES. ALL CUTTERS F.O.B. NILES MICHIGAN

WRITE FOR FREUD CUTTER CATALOG ENCLOSE 2.00 FOR POSTAGE & HANDLING OR OUR COMPLETE CATALOG AT 4.50 INCLUDING POSTAGE & HANDLING IN CONT. U. S. AD 1.50 OUTSIDE CONT. U. S.

DERDA INC.
1195 W. BERTRAND ROAD — NILES, MICHIGAN 49120
616-683-6666

ROCKWELL - POLITAS - STANLEY - BOSCH - PROGRESS - KRÄHMER - BATAORI - MAKITA
WOODWORKING MACHINERY DISTRIBUTORS

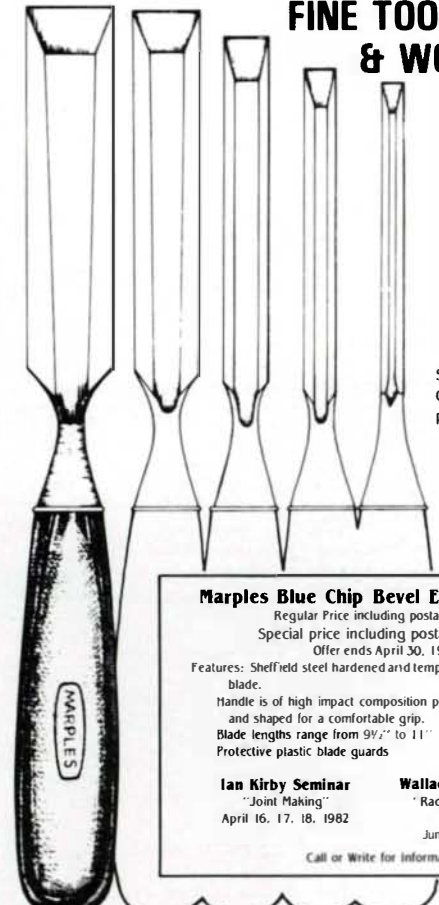
FINE TOOL & WOOD STORE

"Mail Order Only"
724 West Britton Road
Oklahoma City, OK 73114

CALL TOLL FREE
800-255-9800
in Oklahoma Call Collect
405-842-6828

Send \$2.00 for the 1982
Catalog. Refundable with
purchase.

Record • Inca
Makita • Japanese
Books & Magazines

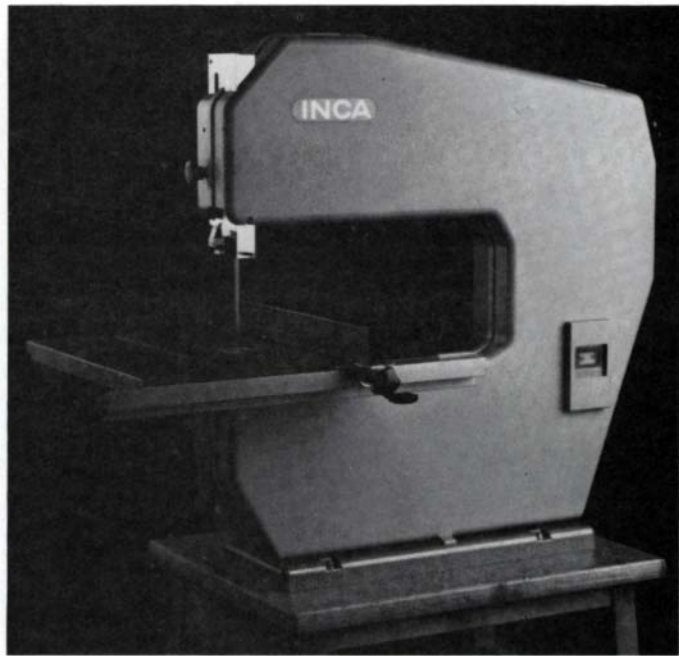


Marples Blue Chip Bevel Edge Chisel Set
Regular Price including postage \$39.40
Special price including postage \$32.00
Offer ends April 30, 1982

Features: Sheffield steel hardened and tempered along full length of blade.
Handle is of high impact composition plastic, square in section and shaped for a comfortable grip.
Blade lengths range from 9 1/2" to 11"
Protective plastic blade guards

Ian Kirby Seminar **Wallace Kunkel Seminar**
"Joint Making" "Radial Arm Saw, Router,
April 16, 17, 18, 1982 & Router Table"
June 11, 12, 13, 1982

Call or Write for Information



There's a name for a joiner's bandsaw this professional and this versatile.

INCA Model 710.

And we're pleased to have the Injecta INCA name on the newest, most precisely engineered bandsaw anywhere.

First, because it's very versatile. Our new Injecta INCA bandsaw has a 20" throat that's large enough to accommodate extremely wide pieces and complex curves—and has an 8" depth of cut that even permits resawing of thick boards. Blades range from an extraordinary 1/16" to 1", well-supported by ball bearing guides, top and bottom. No other bandsaw allows you to do fretwork this delicate, as well as resaw using a 1" blade. For handling very large stock, extension rails enlarge your table area to 40" x 20".

Second, because it's powerful. Our new INCA bandsaw has three standard speeds, and it's powered by a 1 hp. or 1 1/2 hp. motor. So you can crosscut, make joints, make complex curves and shapes, and rip through just about any tough wood or non-ferrous metal with ease.

Third, because it's economical. Our 20" bandsaw is less than \$1350, including stand and 1 hp. motor. Backed by our famous Five-Year Limited Warranty.

There's only one name that matters when you're looking for a bandsaw this unique. Ours.



We ship to retail customers throughout the United States.

Garrett Wade Co., Dept. 49
161 Ave. of the Americas, N. Y., N. Y. 10013

- Gentlemen:
- Send me your INJECTA INCA catalog. Enclosed is 50¢.
 - Send me your 212-page catalog of the finest woodworking hand tools, machinery and accessories. (This includes the INJECTA INCA catalog.) Enclosed is \$3.

NAME _____

ADDRESS _____

CITY _____

STATE _____ ZIP _____

THE WOOD and TOOL STORE at PUNKIN HOLLOW

TYZACK SAWS Non Pareil Tenon Saw Brass Back Beech Handle



The glazed and highly polished blade is hardened and tempered, fully tensioned and stiffened with a hand polished heavyweight brass back.

The polished beech handle is secured with three brass screws and each saw is individually inspected to our high quality standards.

No.	List	Sale
120 12" 15 tpi	\$36.95	\$30.95 ppd
120 8" 20 tpi	\$34.95	\$28.95 ppd

RECORD BENCH PLANE



RO5 1/2 Jack Plane
All parts accurately machined. Tungsten Vanadium Cutters.
15" long 2 3/8" wide
List \$59.95
Sale **\$49.95 ppd**

EDUCATIONAL SEMINARS

Ian Kirby March 19, 20, 21 *Torsion Box Construction & Veneering.*

ENGLISH HARDWOOD OUR SPECIALTY

Wholesale or retail prices available on Acacia, English Brown Oak, Burr Elm, English Yew, Figured Sycamore, Applewood, English Walnut and others. Inquires welcomed.

Send \$1 for our catalogue. Call, write or stop by for more information.

THE WOOD AND TOOL STORE at PUNKIN HOLLOW

N34 W24041 Capitol Dr., Pewaukee, WI 53072 / 414-691-9411
20 mins. west of Downtown Milwaukee / SW corner of Hwy 190 and Cty F.

Events (continued)

Bowling Green S.U. and De Vilbiss Co. March 22-26. Contact Dr. Kruppa, (419) 372-2436.
Workshop—Windsor chairmaking with Michael Dunbar at Hiram College, March 14-19 and 21-26. Contact David Factor, 18125 Madison Rd., Parkman, 44080.

OKLAHOMA: Workshop—Antique Restoration, April 16-17. \$55 fee. Contact Joanne Kennedy, 4701 Twelfth Ave. NW, Norman, 73069.
Seminar—Ian Kirby: jointmaking, April 16-18; Wallace Kunkel: radial-arm saw, router and router-table, June 11-13. Fine Tool and Wood Store, 724 W. Britton Rd., Oklahoma City.

OREGON: Exhibition—Wild bird sculptures in wood, April 3-4. Western Forestry Center, 4033 S.W. Canyon Rd., Portland.

PENNSYLVANIA: Woodcarving Show—Penna. Delaware Valley Wood Carvers, April 3-4. Fiesta Inn, Rt. 611 & Pa. Turnpike, Willow Grove.
Exhibition—furniture construction, March 2-April 30; Advanced furniture design seminar, April 24. \$65. Jeffrey Greene Design Studio, Ney Alley, New Hope, 18938.
Juried Crafts Exhibition—Museum of Art, Pennsylvania State University, July 6-Sept. 12. Slides by April 1. Write S. Mershon, Box 5, Lemont, 16851.
Workshop—"The Design Process and Method of Presentation for Private and Public Commissions." Stephen Hogbin, March 1-5. Contact Weiland, Indiana Univ. of Penn., 15705.

TENNESSEE: Juried Craft Exhibition—Tennessee Artists-Craftsmen's Assoc., March. University Gallery, Memphis State University, Memphis.
Courses—Bruce Beeken, steambending, June 7-18. Appalachian Center for Crafts, Rt. 3, Smithville, 37166.
Craft Fair—Southern Highland Handicraft Guild, at Mills Center. April 8-10, Gatlinburg.

TEXAS: Juried Exhibition—Texas Designer/Craftsmen, March 22 to April 3, Texas A&M campus. Write Box 821, Bryan, 77806.

Joinery Workshop—by Richard Tucker, March 13. Wood and Tool Store, 1936 Record Crossing, Dallas, 75235.

Juried Crafts & Art Fair—March 20-28, downtown Houston. Contact The Houston Festival, Crafts and Arts Exposition Committee, 6128 Village Pkwy., Houston, 77005.

UTAH: Juried Exhibition—all crafts. April 1-30. Write Iron Co. School District, Cedar City Art Committee, PO Box 879, Cedar City, 84720.

VIRGINIA: Show—Creative Wood Works/Utilitarian Objects, 1982, by Va. Woodworkers, through Mar. 14. Fine Arts Assoc., Staunton.

WASHINGTON: Woodworkers '82—show by Olympic Peninsula Guild of Woodworkers, Memorial weekend. Pope Marine Bldg., on Ferry Wharf, Port Townsend.

WASHINGTON, D.C.: Exhibition—de Stijl design movement, April 10-June 27, Hirshorn Museum, Washington, D.C.

WEST VIRGINIA: Workshop with Tage Frid, March 1-5. Write Cedar Lake Craft Center, Ripley.
Juried Woodworking Exhibition—June 20-July 31. To enter write John Ellis, Stifel Fine Arts Center, 1330 National Road, Wheeling, 26003.

NOVA SCOTIA: Courses—Plane and clamp making, Richard Tyner, begins March 24, \$45; lathe instruction, furniture making, Deryk Jones, Fall '82. Contact Richard Tyner, 32 Edmonds Grounds, Halifax, B3N 1M6

ONTARIO: Show & Sale—Tools, April 4, York Farmers' Market, 7509 Yonge St., Thornhill.

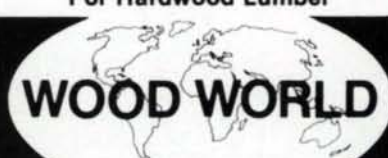
**GOOD ENOUGH TO
CARVE ABE
HONEST**



Our line of innovative wood-working equipment makes it easy!
Find out how to duplicate virtually anything in wood with a **Dupli-Carver™**

Send \$1.00 for brochure today.
Dupli-Carver™
Dept. 704
4004 W. 10th Street
Indianapolis, IN 46222
(317) 243-7565

For Hardwood Lumber



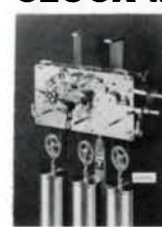
WOOD WORLD

9006 Waukegan Rd.
Morton Grove, IL 60053
(312) 965-4420

Over 50 species

- Rosewood • Teak • Zebrawood
- Walnut • Oak • English Yew
- Bubinga • Cherry • Mahogany

CLOCK MOVEMENTS



Fine quality can still be found in clock mechanisms. We carry only the best and they are the most economical in the long run. All types of mechanical clock and music box movements and dials. Also quartz battery-operated movements. Create your own original case design. Enjoy dealing with a family-operated, 25-year-old company for quality and reasonable prices. Send \$1.00 for catalog.

Midwest Importers, Dept. FW1
1101 Westport Road
Kansas City, MO 64111
(816) 753-5654

PARKS
12" THICKNESS PLANER



MORE THAN 50,000 IN USE ALL OVER THE WORLD

● The PARKS No. 95 is a compact, sturdy thickness planer that offers mill planer precision and ruggedness at a modest price! Write for complete descriptive literature on the No. 95 Planer, as well as on PARKS wood- and metal-cutting Band Saws and Planer-Jointer Combination Machines.

THE PARKS WOODWORKING MACHINE CO.
Dept. FW, 1501 Knowlton St., Cincinnati, Oh. 45223
Mfrs. of Quality Woodworking Machines Since 1887

BUILD YOUR OWN POWER TOOLS

METAL PARTS KITS AT LOW FACTORY DISCOUNT PRICES FOR: **SAVE \$50 TO \$500**

- 12-IN. BAND SAW
- 18-IN. BAND SAW
- 10-IN. TILT/ARBOR SAW
- COMB. DRILL PRESS-LATHE
- 9-IN. TILT TABLE SAW
- 6-IN. BELT SANDER
- SPINDLE SHAPER

PLANS Full Size Patterns \$400 per plan Deductible

85,000 in use. Sold for 35 years.

KITS FROM \$39.99 to \$169.99

Featured in Workbench, Popular Science, Mechanix Illustrated. No machining, no welding. 5-Year Full-Service Guarantee. Step-by-step plans, photos, full-scale patterns show how. Send \$4.00 each plus \$1.00 for postage, starting tool plans wanted. Catalog included. Or, send \$1.00 for Catalog!

GILLIOM MFG., INC. Dept. FW-3, St. Charles, Mo. 63301

Rudolf Bass, Inc. proudly announces their 1982 Woodworking Exhibition in Jersey City, NJ on:

- April 22 1-9 p.m.
- April 23 1-9 p.m.
- April 24 9-5 p.m.

Rockwell Int'l., Timesavers, Whirlwind/Simplex, Powermatic. All under power with trained factory personnel. Free admission, refreshments served. For info. call 201-433-3800

NOW AVAILABLE

The Most Complete Catalog ever compiled for the Woodworker.

Send for your catalog now.

Only \$5.00 (to be applied to your first purchase)

Over 300 pages

Rudolf Bass, Inc.
45 Halladay Street Jersey City, New Jersey 07304
I'm enclosing \$5. for my catalog (Check or money order, no cash or COD, please).

Name _____ Address _____ City/State _____ Zip _____

The Unique Woodworkers' Store

Fine Hardwoods and Woodworking Supplies
Send for brochure
Mail Orders

(301) 467-9443
TELEX: 87498

Craft Woods

York Road & Beaver Run Lane, Cockeysville, Maryland 21030

MAKE TOYS Plans, Hardware
Wheels, Parts
Catalog \$1.00

Cherry Tree Toys, Mills Rd., St. Clairsville, OH 43950

PROFESSIONAL TURNING TOOLS

Fittings and accessories
Send one dollar bill for catalog
PETER CHILD
The Old Hyde, Little Yeldham,
Halstead, Essex, England.

SOLID BRASS HINGE SPECIAL
\$8.90 a pair for either style
Steeple Tip Cylinder Hinge 4 1/4 in.
(for overlay or 1/2 overlay) or
Loose Joint Hinge 4 1/2 in.
(flush door, specify right or left hand)
Add \$1.50 for Postage and Handling.
Check or Money Order. Catalog \$1
(free w/special or ref. w/1st order)

Imported European Hardware
4295 South Arville
Las Vegas, Nevada 89103

Write or call now for **FREE** brochures
**QUALITY HARDWOOD FURNITURE
KITS & FINISHED FURNITURE**

- 1878 Swing Rocker Kit, Plans, Parts
 - Fern Stand
 - Hour Glass
 - Child's Morris Chair
 - Child's Caned Rocking Chair
 - Roycroft Style Sewing Table Kit
- HERITAGE DESIGN**
P.O. Box 103, Monticello, Iowa 52310 Ph. (319) 465-5374

X-TRA HAND
Heavy Duty Ball Bearing Work Stand
Adjusts 27" to 48". Heavy gauge welded all-steel
constructor. Wide rubber-tipped feet. Supports
150# with stability & ease. Direct from Manufacturer
to your shop, a quality product, satisfaction guar-
anteed. Literature on request. \$42.95 + \$7.50
shipping. VISA or MasterCard accepted.

(813) 494-3118
B.B. Mfg., P.O. Box 2336-F, Arcadia, FL 33821

HARDWOODS FOR SALE
Walnut Cherry Oak
Clock and Table Slabs
Catalog - \$1.50
KOUNTRY KRAFT HARDWOODS
RR 1, Lake City, Iowa 51449

TOY PARTS
WHEELS—PEGS—BALLS
Send 25¢—Catalog Wood Parts
WOODWORKS 4013-A Clay Ave.
Fort Worth, TX 76117

**FREE! HARDWOOD VENEERS
& LUMBER CATALOG**
96 varieties world's rarest veneers and
lumber at reasonable prices. Simplified
veneer instructions plus full color
wood selector included. Send for free
catalog now and get special bonus
starter offers. **SAVE 25% Hurry!**

BOB MORGAN WOOD, Dept. FO4K37
1123 Bardstown Rd., Louisville, Ky. 40204

AMERICA'S 7 BEST POWER TOOL BUYS

1 **8" TILT ARBOR SAW**
8" tilt arbor saw crosscuts, rips, mitres, cuts compound angles, dadoes, coves, moldings. Less blade, motor. Rip fence for easy alignment \$6.50 add'l. Ball bearing model \$12.50 add'l. Takes 1/3 h.p. motor or larger, standard blades, attachments 22 lbs. f.o.b. factory **\$52.50**

2 Changes from horizontal to vertical in seconds
BELT SANDER
Precision heavy duty sander includes a 4" x 36" sanding belt. Uses 1/3 h.p. or larger motor. V-pulley drive and multi-purpose drive spindle. Disc sander accessory, \$17.00 add'l. Mitre gauge, \$3.50 add'l. 18 lbs. f.o.b. factory **\$52.00**

3 12" swing industrial size 3 speed pulley
4 FOOT WOOD LATHE
Does the job of \$150 unit. Tubular steel bed rails, screw action tail stock. Use any size motor. 4" face plate. \$4.50 30 lbs. f.o.b. factory. **\$67.75**
DELUXE HEAVY DUTY LATHE
Double shielded, lubricated for life ball bearings. 30 lbs. f.o.b. factory. **\$79.50**

4 **LONG BED WOOD LATHE**
55" version of the deluxe heavy duty lathe, has ball bearing live center in tail stock and extra heavy bed tubes 40 lbs. f.o.b. factory **\$94.00**
HIGH SPEED TURNING CHISELS { Set of 3, \$11.00
Set of 8, \$29.00

5 **JOINTER-PLANER**
4" x 22". Cast iron and steel, precision ground adjustable tables. For planing, joints, bevels. Cuts to 1/8" depth. Fence adjusts from 0° to 50°. Steel knives and dual guards. Use any motor. Precision ball bearing industrial model, \$15.70 add'l. 19 lbs. f.o.b. factory **\$63.30**

6 **1 TON ARBOR PRESS**
Many uses such as pressing bearings or shafts, controlled bending and riveting. Has a 4 position anvil and machined rack and pinion drive. Cast iron camel back frame for rigidity and strength. 3 1/2" depth of throat. 37 lbs. f.o.b. factory **\$64.95**

7 **HORIZONTAL-VERTICAL METAL CUTTING BANDSAW**
Use any size motor.
A vertical bandsaw and horizontal cut-off machine with automatic shut-off. Cast iron body, ball bearing blade guides, worm gear reduction, adjustable tension spring. 3 speeds. With stand and blade 1/2" x 64 1/2". 137 lbs. f.o.b. factory. **\$300.00**

These power tools have no chrome, embossed nameplates or any other useless extras... but they do the same job as tools costing 2 to 3 times the price! And their performance has been proven in the shops of literally millions of professionals and serious amateurs.

Don't be misled by AMT's low prices; these are quality tools. They are full scale, full speed and offer top performance and precision. There are good reasons why we are able to offer such values. Here is how we do it:

Engineered for simplicity: After years of engineering refinements, virtually all the frills have been eliminated in order to save you money. **Faster machining:** Specially designed automatic machining equipment cuts costs by cutting production time. **Standard parts:** Ordinary hardware items replace custom parts for enormous savings.

Volume: Our own foundry, our huge mass production facilities and our large buying power—all keep costs down. **Direct factory purchase:** You pocket the savings but we still offer our two terrific guarantees!

POWER SAW: Our tilt arbor saw comes completely assembled with ground cast iron table, safety guard, splitter and mitre gauge.

In addition you get a free set of cabinet base plans that show you how, with one sheet of 3/4" plywood, you can convert this saw into a floor model with a big 27" x 24" top. Cabinet rip fence only \$7.50 additional. And you can use your new saw to cut out the cabinet base!

BRAND NEW ELECTRIC MOTOR
Develops a full 1 h.p., 17 lbs. f.o.b. factory. (purchased separately \$54.55) \$49.50

AMT OFFERS TWO GUARANTEES:

OUR 10-DAY MONEY BACK GUARANTEE
Try any of these power tools and compare it with any similar machine at any price. If not satisfied return it for prompt no questions asked refund! We pay the return shipping charges.

10 YEAR LIMITED WARRANTY
Any part or parts of these AMT power tools (except motor which carries a one year limited warranty) which becomes inoperative for any reason within-10 years after purchase date will be repaired or replaced by the factory with no charge to the purchaser other than postage.

AMERICAN MACHINE & TOOL CO., 4TH AND SPRING STS., ROYERSFORD, PENNSYLVANIA 19468

BUY DIRECT... USE THIS HANDY ORDER COUPON TODAY

AMT American Machine & Tool Co., Dept. FW32, Fourth & Spring Sts., Royersford, Pa. 19468
Please send me the units checked. Payment in full enclosed \$ _____ or \$5 deposit each item enclosed, balance C.O.D. I must be fully satisfied or will return unit within 10 days for full refund. No questions asked.

1 8" tilt arbor saw, \$52.50
 Standard rip fence, \$6.50
 Long cabinet rip fence, \$7.50
 Ball bearing spindle, \$12.50

2 Belt sander, \$52.00
 Disc sander attachment, \$17.00
 Mitre gauge for sander, \$3.50

3 12" swing, 4' lathe, \$67.75
 Deluxe ball bearing lathe, \$79.50
 Face plate, \$4.50

4 Long bed wood lathe, \$94.00
 Face plate, \$4.50

Turning chisels for any lathe
 Set of 3, \$11.00
 Set of 8, \$29.00

5 Jointer-planer, \$63.30
 Ball bearing spindle, \$15.70

6 1 ton arbor press with four position anvil, \$64.95

7 Horizontal-vertical metal cutting bandsaw, \$300.00
General Electric Motors
 \$49.50 (with other item)
 \$54.55 (purchased separately)

Visit our Royersford factory show-room for these same low prices. 4th and Spring Sts. From 9 to 4:30 on weekdays and 9 to 12 on Sat

NAME _____
ADDRESS _____
CITY _____ STATE _____ ZIP _____

CLASSIFIED

Outstanding N.Y. state Co-ed SUMMER RESIDENT CAMP seeking well-qualified instructor to teach woodworking. TLC, 28 Warren Dr., Syosset, NY 11791.

APPRENTICESHIP in structured two-year program for fine woodworking in prominent studio/workshop/showroom. Individual supervision working with solid walnut/rosewoods using only interlocking wood joints and pegs. Tuition. Jeffrey Greene Design Studio, Ney Alley, New Hope, PA 18938. (215) 862-5530.

Wanted: EXPERIENCED WOODWORKER to do cabinet work. Reply Cherubini Boat Co., PO Box 8, Roebling, NJ 08554.

Multi-faceted WOODWORKING BUSINESS. Incredible growth prospects. Current annual gross \$100,000 plus. Home, separate well-equipped shop, experienced employees, finished inventory and assignable contracts. Contact Rich Grainger or Mike Jurica, Pioneer Investment Company Realtors, Drawer JJ, Taos, NM 87571.

Now you have a place to ADVERTISE AND DISPLAY your woodworking abilities. Bill Higgins, 11731 N. Ash St., Denver, CO 80233. (303) 457-4082.

Company serving nationwide clients seeks original rocking furniture. ROCK-A-WAY, 3523 Hull Ave., Bronx, NY 10467. (212) 654-5026.

KILN DRIED butternut, basswood, cherry, curly and bird's-eye maple, oak and walnut. Forklift handling and surfacing facilities. Phone inquiries only, please. Mornings, (802) 453-2897. Lathrop's Maple Supply.

KOA SPECIAL—4/4 plain cut and figured. 50 other species. Lumber and veneer. Quantity discounts. The Hardwood Centre, Inc., 2300 Frankfort Ave., Louisville, KY 40206.

TURNERS/CARVERS. Cocobolo, rosewood, other exotics. Logs in the round to 24 inches diameter. Great Western Hardwoods, 650 St. John, Pasadena, CA 91105. (213) 441-1067.

ROCHESTER AREA: hardwoods, plywoods, *FWW* books, Makita, woodworking tools, Japanese tools and waterstones. Pittsford Lumber & Woodshop, 50 State St., Pittsford, NY 14534. (716) 586-1877.

A.&M. WOOD SPECIALTY INC., PO Box 3204, Cambridge, Ont., Canada. (519) 653-9322. Extensive inventory of top-quality foreign and domestic hardwoods. Write for free price list.

CURLY AND BIRD'S-EYE MAPLE, 4/4 and 8/4. Available micro-surfaced or rough sawn. (207) 397-4281. L&M Inc., Box 525, Belgrade Lakes, ME 04918.

INDIANA. Northwest Lumber. Huge stock of fine hardwood, Makita tools, veneer, carving tools, hand tools, etc. 5035 Lafayette Rd., Indianapolis.

FINE CABINET PLYWOOD. Cut sizes. Full sheets. Many species and thicknesses. Free catalog! Plywood Depot, Box 897, Gaylord, MN 55334.

Cherry, ash, oak, mahogany, maple, walnut DOWELS, face-grain plugs, edging strips and molding. Odd Ball Supply, Box 133, No. Attleboro, MA 02761.

CRAFTING SMOKING PIPES. Book. Briar, stems, special tools. PIMO W32, Box 59211, Chicago, IL 60659.

TIRED OF SANDPAPER? Send \$1 for booklet "How to Use Scrapers." Norwalk Machine Works, PO Box 2121, Norwalk, CT 06852.

Oliver, Yates, Northfield, Porter and other fine working machines, rebuilt. PUGET SOUND MACHINERY, (206) 627-0802. Tacoma, WA.

SPRING SPECIAL—NEW WOODWORKING MACHINERY: 12-speed by 1-in. heavy-duty bench milling/drilling machine, \$1385. 12-speed by 3/8-in. bench drill press, \$255. 14-in. woodworking bandsaw with base, \$410. 10-in. contractor's table saw with base, \$536. 5-speed by 1/2-in. drill press, \$185. All complete with full electrics. Ready to go. Other models and used machines available. McKenzie Engineering Co., 78 So. Main St., Newtown, CT 06470. (203) 426-2363.

JAPANESE TOOLS. Largest selection in New England. Mahogany Masterpieces, authorized INCA dealer serving central New England and Boston. (603) 736-8227. Visit us in Bear Brook State Park, New Hampshire. Sorry, no mail orders.

JAPANESE TOOLS SINCE 1888. Water stones, tension saws, inlaid and uncommon tools. Free catalog. (206) 622-8452. Tashiro's, 618 So. Jackson, Seattle, WA 98104.

SEATTLE: The Wooden Boat Shop now stocks fine woodworking tools—large selection, just like the big-time catalogs. Come in and browse—touch before you buy. 1007 NE Boat St., Seattle, WA 98105. (206) 634-3600.

BUCK TURNING TOOLS. Set of 8, regular \$89, special \$59 postpaid. Bargaincatalog, \$1. Rego, Downing, Fall River, MA 02723.

MINNEAPOLIS: Wood Carvers Supply sells Hitachi and Makita power tools, Primus planes, Marples, Record, Kunz, Sorby and Henry Taylor hand tools, Norton sharpening stones, Japanese saws, books and much more. 3000-tool catalog, \$1. 3056 Excelsior Blvd., MN 55416. (612) 927-7491.

CARPENTERS MACHINERY CO., INC. has one of the largest inventories of new and used woodworking machinery in the country. Over 100,000 sq. ft. inventory. Offices in Philadelphia and York, Pa. SPECIAL #15-231 Rockwell 15-in. drill press, \$899; #34-761 Rockwell 10-in. UNISAW 1.5HP, 1PH, \$1349; #49-255 Rockwell shop vac, \$79. F.O.B. Phila./York. While supplies last—act now. Carpenters Machinery Co., Inc., 212 No. Eleventh St., Philadelphia, PA 19107. (215) 922-7034; 365 West Cottage Pl., York, PA 17403. (717) 843-2101.

TOOLS—Catalog features antique tools of cabinetmaker and other trades. Good selection of complex molding planes. For information send card, or \$3 for catalog Number 282 to: TOOLS, Box 400004, Dallas, TX 75240.

GUITAR, BANJO, violin, mandolin-making materials, accessories, books, Piano-tuning kits. Catalog \$1. International Luthiers Supply, Box 15444, Tulsa, OK 74112.

Learn the craft of instrument building. Guitar and mandolin. Brochure. George Morris, VERMONT INSTRUMENT WORKSHOP, Post Mills, VT 05058. (802) 333-4033.

Stainless steel and brass, SCREWS AND BOLTS. Small quantities. Free catalog. Elwick, Dept. 437, 230 Woods Lane, Somerdale, NJ 08083.

BANDSAW BLADES for wood or metal 1/2 in. to 1/2 in. wide. 7¢ per inch, \$1.50 shipping. Other widths available. Saw Well Company, PO Box 497, Welches, OR 97067.

SAVE 50% + ON SANDPAPER—all types. Also bandsaw blades. Shopsmith owners: 12-in. discs, \$1.25; 6-in. by 48-in. belts, \$3. For pricelist send SASE #10, Fixmaster, Box 15521, Atlanta, GA 30333.

FINE WOODWORKING SLIPCASE. Magazines fit into cases to become valuable reference volumes. Blue front embossed in gold. One case (12 issues) \$5.85, 3 or more, \$5.30 ea. The Highsmith Co., Box 25FW, Fort Atkinson, WI 53538.

Catalog of over 50 WOODEN TOY PATTERNS, wooden toykits and toy-makers' supplies. Send \$1 to Toy Designs, PO Box 441-F, Newton, IA 50208.

GEARLESS CLOCKWORKS, wooden. Complete plans, drawings, templates, \$4. Candlepress, 1124-F NW 40th Ave., Gainesville, FL 32601.

18th CENTURY SWING: ages 5-12. Full-size pattern, materials list, \$2. N. Frisbie, 2025 Sandra Dr., Clearwater, FL 33516.

WOODWORKERS. Make toys for profit. Patterns/parts wholesale. Catalog: Luvbuilt Toys, Inc., Tahoe City, CA 95730-5459.

MAKE TOYS. Plans, hardwood wheels, parts. Catalog, \$1. Cherry Tree Toys, Mills Rd., St. Clairsville, OH 43950.

Catalog of unique WOODEN TOY PATTERNS. \$1, refundable. Playrite, Rt. 8, Box 343F, Moultrie, GA 31768.

The PIANO HARP—a touch-sensitive harpsichord! You can build it. Write Barron Pianos, 7228 Eads Ave., La Jolla, CA 92037.

WORKSHOPS: Woodcarving, May 17-21; Furniture Conservation, August 2-5, by Wallace Gusler, Curator, Colonial Williamsburg, Campbell Center, PO Box 66, Mt. Carroll, IL 61053.

WOODTURNING—Are you interested in woodturning as a hobby? Take a two-day intensive course for beginners from a qualified instructor. Write PRACTICAL WOODTURNING, PO Box 102, Orangeville, Ontario, Canada L9W 2Z5.

QUARTZ BATTERY MOVEMENTS. Low prices, from \$3.50 to \$6.95. Send \$1 for catalog. California Time Service, PO Box 2930, Dept. #108SC, Long Beach, CA 90806. (213) 595-5415.

THE GOLD LEAF PEOPLE™. Pack minimum, genuine, composition, tools, texts. Woodart Essentials, PO Box 260, Monsey, NY 10952.

WOODBURNING TOOLS. High, controllable heat! Woodcarving and woodburning books, patterns, Panavise, Pyro-Tool, Saral, color pencils, Woodburner's Newsletter, fast service. Catalog, \$1 (refundable). Lewis Tool Co., Box 2066, Hobbs, NM 88241-2066.

HEAT MARK WOOD, leather with your name, signature, initials, logo. Send for quote. C.S. McArthur, 644 N. Stratford Rd., Winston-Salem, NC 27104.

BRANDING IRONS made to order with names, initials, monograms. Signatures, logos, designs, faithfully duplicated. Write for information and sample brandings, giving size and inscription wanted, and intended use. Norcraft Custom Brands, Box 277F, So. Easton, MA 02375. (617) 238-2163. See me at Excellence in Woodworking, Los Angeles.

Large assortment of woodfinishing supplies. No minimum order or small order surcharge. Free brochure. WOODFINISHING ENTERPRISES, Box 10117, Milwaukee, WI 53210-0117.

Electric Burn-in Knife
30 watts, it works!



\$18.95 Post Paid



Strip Paint Fast...
Quickly softens paint to bare wood without scorching. Heavy duty.
Sale \$69.95 post paid
Send \$2.00 New catalog


FINISHING PRODUCTS
4611 Macklind Ave.
St. Louis, MO. 63109

ROSEWOODS AND EXOTICS
Importer Direct
Brazilian Rosewood
Kingwood
Tulipwood
Cocobolo
Pernambuco/Pau Brazil

Wholesale Only
Ship Anywhere

MENDOCINO WOODWORKS
P.O. Box 362, Albion, CA 95410
(707) 877-3408

Electronic Moisture Meter Kit




New 1982 model is easier than ever to assemble, no special tools needed. Reads moisture content 7% to 25%. Comparable to units selling for \$180 or more. Accuracy is guaranteed to 1%.

METER KIT with probe and COMPLETE INSTRUCTIONS, \$69 ppd. USA or send self-addressed stamped envelope for complete information to:

Basic Furniture Company
7440 HWY 14
MIDDLETON, WI 53562
Wisconsin residents add 4% sales tax

Whittling and Carving Tools and Supplies



New 1981 catalog—50¢ (refundable). American made, quality tools, exclusively.

WARREN TOOL CO., INC.
Rt. 1, Box 12-BF, Rhinebeck, NY 12572 (914) 876-7817



**THE
WORLD'S FINEST
CHISEL**

This Oiichi Brand chisel will take a sharper edge and hold it longer than any other chisel in the world. It can be driven with a 20 oz. hammer or hand guided in the most delicate of cuts. Backed by 1000 years of tool making tradition, the Oiichi family prides itself on making only the best. For the only complete catalog of Japanese woodworking tools reflecting this same pride and age old tradition send \$1.00 to:

Woodline The Japan Woodworker
1731 Clement Avenue • Alameda, CA 94501 • Phone: 415 521-1810

FINE KILN DRIED HARDWOOD FOR THE CRAFTSMAN

Box B
Chester, VT 05143
1 Mile south of
the Village

Telephone
802-875-2550



Vermont Furniture Hardwoods

Custom millwork . . .
flooring, doors, paneling,
wainscoting, moulding,
cabinetry and furniture

Quality cabinetwork
on display in our
showroom
consignment selling
inquiries welcome.

Price List available on request

BEAUTIFUL WOOD FINISHING process which produces a beautiful hand-rubbed finish without messy brushes or spraying. It's easy because this specially formulated finish simply wipes on. Unlike conventional finishes it will never yellow, crack or craze and dries dust-free without runs. This oil finish deeply penetrates the wood, creating a durable moisture-resistant surface that brings out the natural beauty of the wood and never needs waxing. Free Wood Finishing Guide and Products Catalog. General Finishes, Box 14363F, Milwaukee, WI 53214.

WOOD & TOOL EXCHANGE

For Sale

Stanley #55, complete, \$350. Will consider trade for clear cypress. M. McKee, Rt. 1, Decorah, IA 52101. (319) 532-9428.

Butternut lumber, KD, 4/4 clear, exceptional color and quality. 2,000 bd. ft., \$1.75-\$2.25/bd. ft. A. Perlman, Windham, VT 05359. (802) 874-4427.

4/4 red oak clear boards rough and green, \$1.35/bd. ft.; AD, surfaced two sides, \$1.75/bd. ft. Also some 6/4 and 8/4. (212) 356-6303.

Mesquite turning and carving blocks. 16/4 ± various sizes. Cut 1 year ago. \$3/bd. ft. Send SASE to Todd Hoyer, Box 1451, Bisbee, AZ 85603 for more information.

Curly red maple, 5/4 KD, select and better, \$2.25/bd. ft. Up to 2,000 bd. ft. available. Also holly lumber, \$1.25/bd. ft., and Gaboon ebony, \$2/lb. Dave Williams, Forge Hill Rd., Virginville, PA 19564. (215) 562-5208.

Never-used long and strong faceplate turning tools of Sheffield steel. Variety of purpleheart turning squares and flat stock S2S. Hugh Strickland, 494 Old Post Rd., No. Attleboro, MA 02760.

Walnut and oak lumber for sale or trade for quality woodworking tools. G.F. Webb, Moultrie, GA. (912) 985-9597.

Stanley #45, complete. 21 cutters, fine condition, no rust, \$135. J. Hester (419) 668-0375.

Stanley #45, 22 cutters and accessories. Slight rust but in good condition. \$125 or best offer. J. Suersted, PO Box 167, Tomales, CA 94971. (707) 763-9632.

24-in. by 8-in. planer, two 10HP, 3PH motors with grinder. 14-in. DeWalt radial-arm, 3HP, 3PH. 4x8-ft. stroke sander, 3HP, 3PH. 24-in. exhaust fan with 50-ft. duct (8-in.) Box 1053, Montague, PEI, Canada COA 1R0.

General 260-1 Vari-speed lathe, excellent condition. Outboard attach., extra faceplates, gap block. \$1850 or trade. E. Landes, Rt. 1, Box 292A, Winters, CA 95694. (916) 795-2648.

Alaskan fossil ivory. Beautiful colors. Suitable for inlay, carving, door-knobs and handles. For sample send SASE and \$7 to Bob Cutler, Box 356, Kenai, AK 99611 or call (907) 283-3655.

Oliver double-arbor table saw. 220v, 3PH, 2HP per arbor. Rolling table and new blade guard. No blades included. Best offer. Rich Polwort, 2112 E. Maple, Enid, OK 73701. (405) 242-0437.

Sperber 34-in. saw mill. Two Stihl 075 engines. Rip chain, slabbing rail, 21-in. and 25-in. bars and chains, helper handle, electric sharpener, \$1575. Bob Thomason, Wayland, MA. (617) 358-5522.

Cocobolo 8/4, 6/4, 5/4, square-edge KD boards. \$15/bd. ft. FOB 1948 Viento Verano Dr., Diamond Bar, CA 91765. Hal Metlitzky. Will ship UPS or truck, freight collect.

Crescent 24-in. jointer. Round head, 7½HP. Runs great. Guard. Use as smaller jointer with capacity for larger work. Will deliver on east coast. \$1800. D. Burkey, Johnstown, PA. (814) 255-5275.

12 species of hardwoods. Oak, walnut, osage, catalpa, etc. Beautiful solid oak tambour molding. Send SASE for description and list. E. Whitty, 9316 S. 69 Ct., Oak Lawn, IL 60453.

Large quantity of cherry. Good, AD, 4/4 and 8/4, \$1.25/bd. ft. M. Morrison, 211 Messick Rd., N. Bloomfield, OH 44450. (216) 889-3770.

Cherry, maple, pine, oak, elm up to 12/4 and 30 in. Wayne Smith, RD4, Box 96A, Montrose, PA 18801. (717) 934-2522.

Record dowel jig and Woodcraft hand grinder. \$40/offer ea. Also 8/4 birch shorts cheap. 666 Jean, Oakland, CA 94610. (415) 655-2453.

Emmert Universal patternmakers vise (ref. *FWW*, #30, p. 75), \$300. Frt. pd. (314) 443-5236.

Ship augers ½ in. to 3 in., most never used. Send SASE for complete list. J.T. Cashman, 168-04 43rd Ave., Flushing, NY 11358.

20-in. by 8-in. thickness planer, American Sawmill (pony) \$2000 or best offer. (212) 358-9378.

Wanted to Buy

Lathe, 48 in. between centers. First 23 issues *Fine Woodworking*. W. Buffington, Zearing, IA 50278.

For Boice Crane spindle shaper model 3100 or 3150, adjustable fence assembly. Also ¾-in. bore jointer cutterhead. L. Wann, 206 Virginia Ave., Westmont, NJ 08108.

Tailstock, crow foot and tool rest for EmcoStar woodworking machine. J. Slavics, 927 N. Liberty St., Arlington, VA 22205.

3-wing, high speed steel shaper cutter and collar set. Must be ¾-in. or ½-in. bore. Delta, Rockwell or similar. Joel Herzal, 1211 Laurent St., Santa Cruz, CA 95060. (408) 426-0810.

Carving copy machine to fit 3-ft. by 2-ft. by 1-ft. pieces. B. Dentzel, 270 Toro Canyon Rd., Carpinteria, CA 93013.

Emmert Roto Vise as shown on p. 75, *FWW* #16. R.Z.B., 4605 S. Matanzas Ave., Tampa, FL 33611. (813) 247-6575.

Interested in buying used or new Little Giant workhorses. Will pay \$150. Weyman, (504) 733-1024.

Rockwell, Powermatic, Myford or equal wood lathe. Photo, condition equipment and price wanted. D. Urban II, 15212 Mustang Rd., Piedmont, OK 73078.

Shopsmith Mark V accessories, arbors, blades. What do you have? D. Radtke, 2211 U. Dr. North, Battle Creek, MI 49017. (616) 964-7831.

Delta/Rockwell Unisaw or other 10-in. table saw of similar quality, single phase. C.L. Smith, Box 1860, RR 1, Greene, ME 04236. (207) 946-5133.

SITUATIONS WANTED

Dedicated woodworker looking for position, SE Minnesota, western Wisconsin area. Smaller custom shop. Need steady challenging work. R.A. Golden, 2300 Howard St. N.E., Minneapolis, MN 55418.

Skilled New Zealand cabinetmaker (29) seeks position in U.S. Experienced in period reproductions, carving, repairs. Write to: Robbie Lauren, 207 Waddington Dr., Naenae, Lower Hutt, New Zealand for photos, references, more information.

Quality shop to share in rural community. Serious craftsman only. Mild climate, cheap wood, low overhead. Paradise! Harvey Baker, R3, Box 265A, Waynesboro, TN 38485. (615) 722-9201.

The CLASSIFIED rate is \$3 per word, minimum ad 15 words. Payment must accompany order. Commercial accounts must use Classified. The WOOD & TOOL EXCHANGE and SITUATIONS WANTED rate is \$2 per line, minimum three lines, maximum six lines, limit two insertions per year. Allow 30 letters or spaces per line, including name and address. The Wood & Tool Exchange and Situations are for private use by individuals only. Please inquire for DISPLAY CLASSIFIED rate. Send to: *Fine Woodworking*, Advertising Dept., Box 355, Newtown, CT 06470. Deadline for the May/June issue, February 25th; for the July/August issue, April 23rd.

**ATTENTION
FLORIDA WOODWORKERS**

We have exotic, native
hard and soft woods,
table slabs, veneers, etc.

HENEGAN'S WOOD SHED

7760 Southern Blvd., West Palm Beach, FL 33411
305-793-1557

FREE TURNING BLANK
(with each order)

**ROUND & SQUARE-HARDWOOD
TURNING BLANKS**

DETAILS: Send 50¢
(refundable with order)

CRYSDECREEK WOODSHOPPE
Box 19T, Whitesville, KY 14897

YOU BUILD FROM PLANS
UNIQUE GRANDFATHER CLOCK
— ALL WOOD MOVEMENT —
AND FASCINATING CABINET ESPECIALLY
DESIGNED TO DISPLAY THIS MASTERPIECE
ALSO PLANS FOR CRADLES, HURRICANE LAMPS,
GUN CABINETS, SPINNING WHEELS, AND MORE.

SEND \$1.00 (REFUNDABLE) TO:

ORIGINALS IN WOOD
P.O. BOX 2061
AKRON, OHIO 44309

**R. SORSKY
BOOKSELLER**

Supplier of New and Out Of Print Books
Woodworking Exclusively
Frequent Catalogs \$1.50

BOX F7, 3845 N. BLACKSTONE
FRESNO, CALIFORNIA, U.S.A. 93726

Member American Booksellers Association



To make ten of Sawyer's chairs, left, one for each of us in the workshop, we started with a 6-ft. length of an 18-in. dia. white oak log. After quartering this with wedges to see the lay of the grain, we bucksawed lengths for chair parts. At top, two students saw a bolt for rungs. Steadying the log are Country Workshop sponsor Drew Langsner and his daughter Naomi. Above, teacher Dave Sawyer demonstrates drawknifing a rung on a dumbhead shaving horse.

Green Woodworking

How I split and shaved a chair at Country Workshops

by Rick Mastelli

Last summer, amid the Blue Ridge Mountains of North Carolina, I attended a week-long chairmaking workshop that changed my ideas about working wood. Ten of us had come because we were interested in learning to make chairs in an old way. We put aside our electric tools and surfacing machines, and we kicked the habit of using mill-sawn, kiln-dried wood. We retreated from the cabinetmaker's craft, with its jointing and smoothing planes and sandpaper. Instead, we adopted the tools of the country joiner, who rives the wood and shaves it into sticks and panels.

The joiner's craft has been practiced for centuries in peasant communities, where everyone, for at least part of the year, produces food, shelter, clothing, utensils and furniture. Originally a homely craft, it evolved into a specialized profession, which in parts of this country is being revived as part of the modern-day homesteader's diversified livelihood. The country joiner does not employ a sawmill, but goes directly to the local tree and, treating wood like the bundle of fibers that it is, pries it apart with wedges, gluts and froes. He shapes this riven wood with drawknives and spokeshaves, retaining the



Sawyer produces as many as 50 ladderback chairs a year without using jigs. "In my power-tool phase," he said, "I made some very fancy jigs. But it turned out to be mindless. . . . And I'd be looking for them and fiddling with them, and they'd end up in the fire." So now Sawyer just clamps the posts to the bench, shims to "close enough" and guides his brace and bit with a T-bevel and his eye.

continuity of the fibers that a rip saw would sever. Riven wood is stronger than sawn wood, easy to work while green, and more resistant to the deterioration of age and weather. Its grain and figure can be felt, not just seen as in planed and sanded wood. Its texture is rich and varied. And when you rive and shave wood, there is no dusty air to breathe. Green woodworking relies upon simple tools, cheap materials and direct processes. The result can be as useful, beautiful and inspiring to make as the chair pictured here.

Our classroom was an old tobacco barn on Drew and Louise Langsner's 100-acre homestead in Marshall, N.C. To get there, you drive along increasingly rural roads, till the last half-mile or so of the Langsner's driveway, which is best walked. "When you come to Country Workshops," remarked Langsner as his truck bounced us up to within reach of the farm, "you come to the country." Each summer, the Langsners sponsor as many as five week-long workshops in country crafts, alternating their workshop responsibilities with their farm chores. We helped a little with those chores, ate three bountiful meals a day of farm produce, and slept in our own tents. We worked long days and into the night, not exploring our individual bents, but practicing craft in the age-old sense. We did not design, for instance, but copied a traditional design. And though we initialed the parts we made, we didn't take the identification too seriously—on the first day we shaved more than a hundred rungs and threw them into a communal pile. In this way we concentrated on acquiring skills and minimized prideful fussing, making extra parts when we were finished with our own, and sharing them readily.

The workshop reflected the character of its teacher, Dave Sawyer, a 45-year-old New Englander who now lives in East Calais, Vt. Sawyer has an M.I.T. degree in mechanical engineering, but he retired from that career at age 28. "If I'd lived a hundred years ago," he said one evening in the barn, while tenoning rungs at the pole lathe to help some of us catch up, "I'd have done fine in mechanical engineering, because then people built what they thought up." The rhythmic slap of the lathe punctuated his words. "But thinking's pretty far from doing nowadays in that field." So Sawyer tried restoring old cars, he spent a half year in Bolivia in the Peace Corps Craft Program, and he worked for a while with the Amish. His turning point was the summer he spent working in the shop of Daniel O'Hagan, another sometime teacher at Country Workshops. O'Hagan's example encouraged Sawyer to do direct, simple woodwork. In 1969 he put together his own shop, and he has been making furniture and utensils from green wood ever since.

The ladderback chair we made is little changed from the first one Sawyer made ten years ago. He took the measurements from the first comfortable ladderback he'd found, a factory-made chair from the 1920s that he saw in an antique shop. After some minor changes in the way he made the first six, Sawyer had his product and his procedures down. I asked him, while he was showing us how to shape the back slats, if he was ever tempted to vary the design, to make a fancy chair with carved slats, for instance. "No," he said, "I don't believe in art. I never carved anything in my life, and I don't believe I ever will." Why, I asked? "Because I have no imagination," he said. "I never got into that individual expression bit, and I never made anything original. I work on the Volkswagen theory. You stay with something that works, and you make little improvements as you see them. I tried making an arty



Top, Sawyer marks the end of a bolt for splitting with a froe. The finished rungs have to be $\frac{7}{8}$ in. in diameter, and Sawyer lays out squares only $\frac{1}{8}$ in. oversize. He controls splitting by arranging to split relatively equal portions (figure 2, p. 56), by splitting slowly, and if the split begins to run out, by exerting pressure against the heavier side of the split (figure 3, p. 56, and cover). Above, a student splits rung blanks in a small brake—two boards mounted like scissor blades to hold the work. By the end of the workshop's first day, we had shaved more than a hundred rungs, trying various styles of shaving horses and drawknives. The two horses, top right, are roughed out from thick slabs; the large stone holds them steady. At right, Sawyer loads the rungs into an oil-drum kiln.

chair once. I prefer being productive." I remembered that Drew Langsner had warned me on the way to the farm: "You're going to meet a lot of reactionaries here, people who figure rough woodworking is just fine."

Sawyer's ladderback is fine. It is just as strong-lined and as comfortably proportioned as you'd expect a chair to be that has been unchanged through ten years and hundreds of copies. Its high back is well balanced by the thickening of the back posts below the seat. Sawyer steambends at the thickest part of the legs to increase the chair's stability and to angle the back comfortably. Other ladderback chairs, John Alexander's, for instance (*FWW* #12, p. 46), bend above the seat at the thinnest part of the back posts. Sawyer's chair is stouter than Alexander's elegant rendition. Sawyer's is a professional chairmaker's pre-industrial product, and he makes 20 to 30 of them a year, sometimes as many as 50. It takes him 12 hours

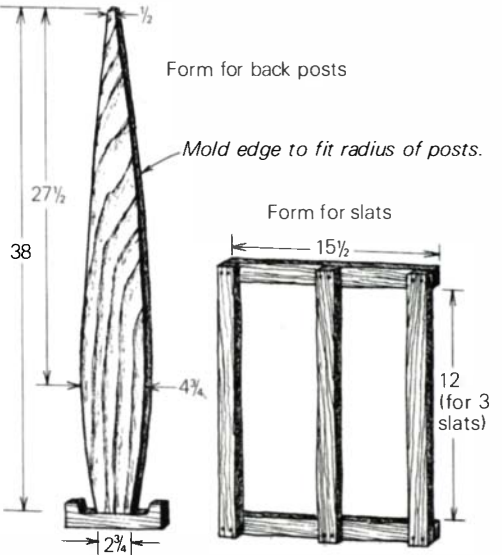
from tree to finished chair, and he gets \$115 for each. When he needs more money he makes wooden hayforks for \$17 apiece. He once made 200 hayforks in two months.

So we learned how to make chairs in batches. For a week we became a green-wood chair shop. Our industry was interspersed with demonstrations and learned, talky meets; the ten of us went home knowing not only how to bust a chair from a tree, but also how to do it efficiently within a daily work rhythm. We began by making rungs because they are easiest to make, and because they want to be drier than the posts into which they are mortised. After assembly, the tenon absorbs moisture from the post and swells while the mortise shrinks, locking the joint firmly. It took us a day to split and shave the rungs, but by the end of that day, the best among us could shave a rung almost as fast as Sawyer, in under 3 minutes. While the rungs dried in a jury-rigged kiln—a



The chair parts are bent without steel straps. First we boiled the 1½-in. to 1-in. diameter posts in water for a couple of hours (the boiler rests between cement blocks in the background of the photo top left). Then we coaxed the bend into shape on the shaving horse. A pad under the horse's head prevents the stock from being marred. The posts are muscled in pairs onto drying forms, above, and held in place with leather thongs while they set overnight. The slats, left, were also boiled, but only for a half hour or so, then bent on the horse and over the knee until they fit on their own drying form. Plans for the forms are given at right.

Drying forms



70-gal. oil drum perched over a smoldering campfire—we split and shaved the posts. By the third day we were dumping the back posts into a smaller drum full of boiling water to prepare them for bending. We flexed the hot posts on a shaving horse, then strapped them to simple forms and laid them in the kiln to set their curve while we split and shaved slats, which went through the same process. All the parts made, we bored the mortises for the front and back rungs and chopped the mortises for the slats. The evening of the fourth day we turned tenons on the ends of the rungs.

We assembled our batch of chairs on the workshop's last day, banging them together with a lead-filled rawhide mallet wielded over a hefty stump. It was heady stuff. First we pounded the front rungs into the front posts, then the back rungs and slats into the back posts. In these sub-assemblies, we bored the mortises for the side rungs, nicking the front

and back rungs so the side rungs would interlock with them, like Lincoln logs. Tension was high as each of us brought our sticks to the assembly stump, sticks that represented a week's shaping and scraping. Driving oversize tenons into slender posts means real fear in that moment when the mallet is poised between blows. Yet chair after chair popped into being. I asked Sawyer why he preferred this daring finale to a project so painstakingly prepared—why not use clamps? It was easier and faster this way, he said, but also the experience should be intense. "If you can get a chair together without splitting, it's not going to split afterwards," he said. "Assembly is the worst time. It's like being born. If you can survive that, chances are you'll last another fifty years."

For most of us, the workshop was over that fifth night. Whether or not we stayed on for Sawyer's optional seat-



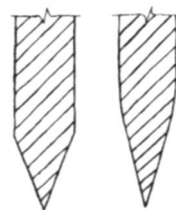
Assembly is tense. Under that lead-filled mallet a week's work might end up a pile of broken sticks. Everyone went home with a chair.

weaving demonstration the next morning, each of us went home with a chair, and that alone was worth the workshop's \$175 tuition. But the real value was in what we'd learned, and the chair was there to remind us of that. I left with an appreciation for green woodworking that continues to grow. It was not the first time I'd sat on a shaving horse, but it was the first I'd done enough work on one to get sore. You learn a lot this way, subtle understandings along with plain, common sense. Surrounded by others to watch and new tools to try, the revelations come, and the horse gets comfortable. Here is some of what I learned.

Measuring—There's nothing novel about cutting a number of parts to size and checking one against another. It's faster, easier and more accurate than measuring each individually. But many of us feel we need drawings covered with dimensions to be able to build anything. We didn't need a drawing to build Sawyer's chair, and there weren't many numbers to worry about either. All we needed to know was recorded on the two sides of a flat stick. It didn't get wrinkled and messy in the shop, and it was always handy to place on the wood to

lay out tapers, bores, mortises or whatever. Figure 1, on the facing page, represents Sawyer's chair stick, and it's all the blueprint you need to make his chair.

Getting the most out of the wood—We split enough wood for ten chairs from a single white oak veneer-quality log 18 in. in diameter and 6 ft. long. We could get a back post and a front post, four short rungs, three long rungs or various other combinations out of the length. With wedges we split the log into quarters, then we read the grain to make best use of the wood. We crosscut the quarters into bolts, pieces the length of the various parts. Then a froe, that long-bladed, long handled, clumsy-looking tool, dimensioned the blanks



Wrong Right

faster, neater and more efficiently than a saw could. We were splitting blanks for rungs $\frac{1}{8}$ in. oversize, blanks for posts $\frac{1}{4}$ in. oversize, and rarely having to reject a piece. The secrets of the froe are as follows: First, it doesn't need a sharp edge, but the bevel must be properly shaped. The bevel on a new froe is usually

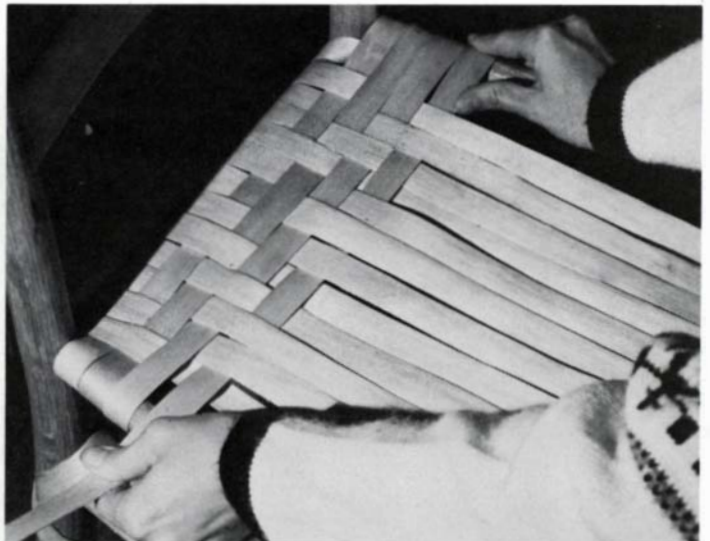


Scribing a back leg for final trimming.

too blunt and too angular. It should be no more than 30°, and it should blend smoothly into the sides of the tool to form a single, convex surface. A facet, as in a chisel or plane-iron bevel, tends to stick in the wood and does not rock smoothly during levering.

Second, the froe must be properly placed on the bolt. When you have to make a number of splits in one bolt, don't start at one end and work across, but start in the middle and then again in the middle of each of the halves, and so on (figure 2, next page). With equal portions on either side of the split it's easier to control its direction. The handle of a good froe is about 16 in. long, the blade about 10 in. Make sure the whole edge is in full contact with the wood before you strike—you're liable to shift the froe if it is slightly angled off the surface. Once you start a split (give it a good rap) you have to follow through, so make sure you begin in the right place.

Now, put down your mallet. One or two blows are all that's needed—the rest is levering not severing. You need a rigid, fork-like arrangement of boards or logs, called a brake, to hold the bolt while you bear on it. If the wood begins to split unevenly, place the heavy side of the split down, and use your



To weave the seat, first wrap the warp in one continuous strip from front to back, splicing your material underneath. Bark and splints shrink as they dry, so leave the warp overnight, then push it tightly together to fit another round or two of warp. The weft can create any number of patterns, here a diamond-shaped herringbone. The triangular spaces at the sides of the seat will be filled with short lengths woven into the weft.

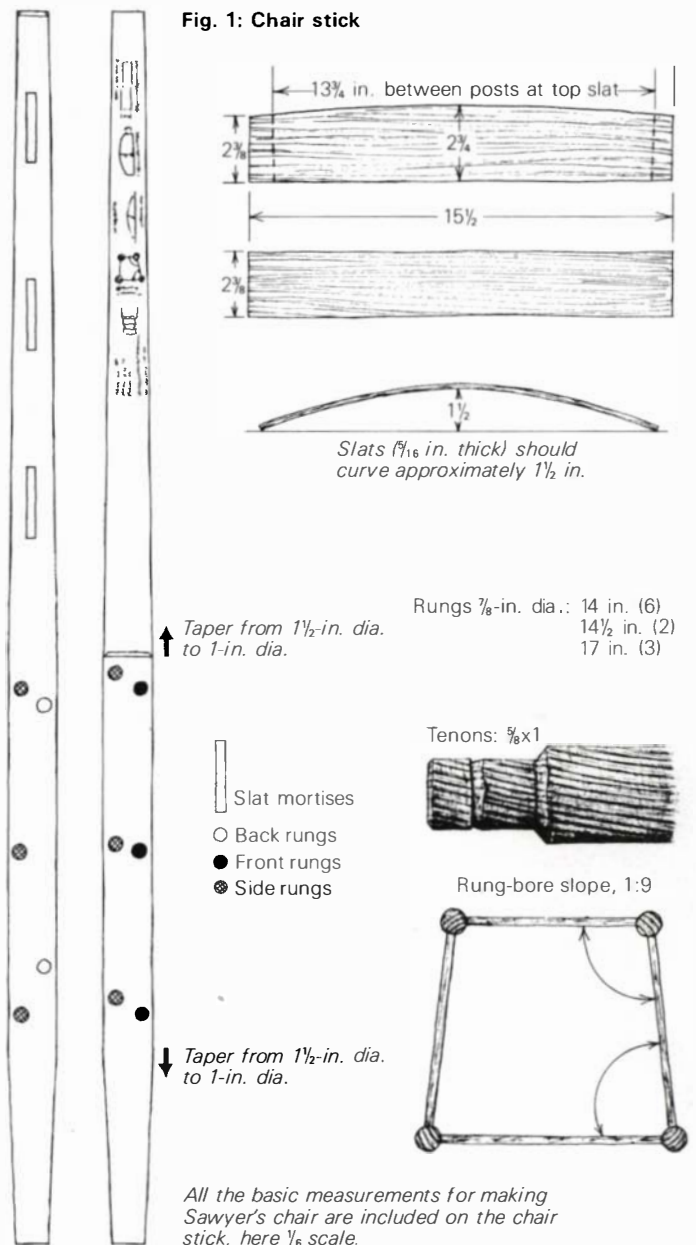
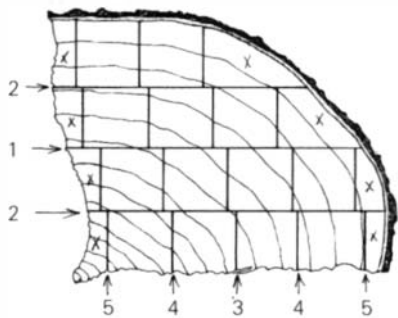
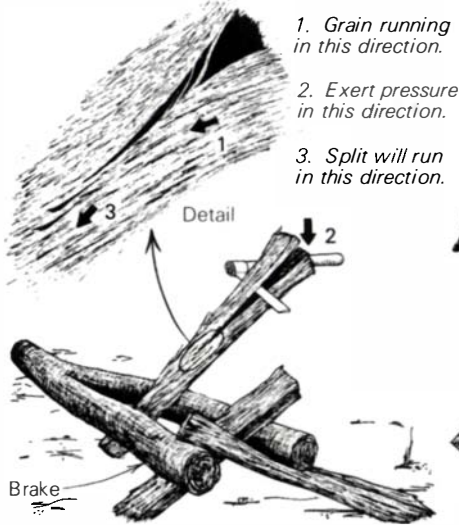


Fig. 2: Splitting order



To get maximum yield from a bolt, split in halves. Equal stock on either side of the split will make it easier to control runoff.

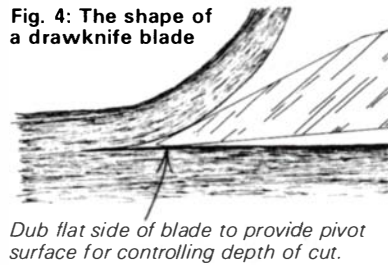
Fig. 3: Controlling runoff



1. Grain running in this direction.
2. Exert pressure in this direction.
3. Split will run in this direction.

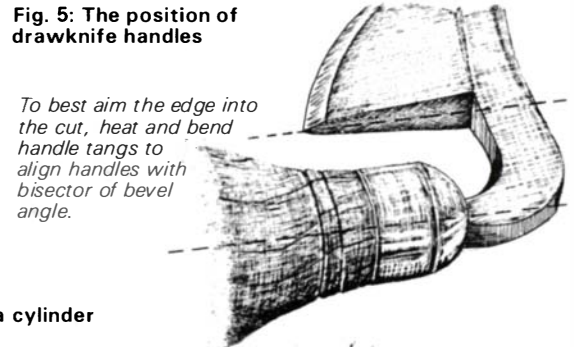
When grain runs off the direction you want to split along, exert greater pressure on the heavier side, and make the split "jump" the grain.

Fig. 4: The shape of a drawknife blade



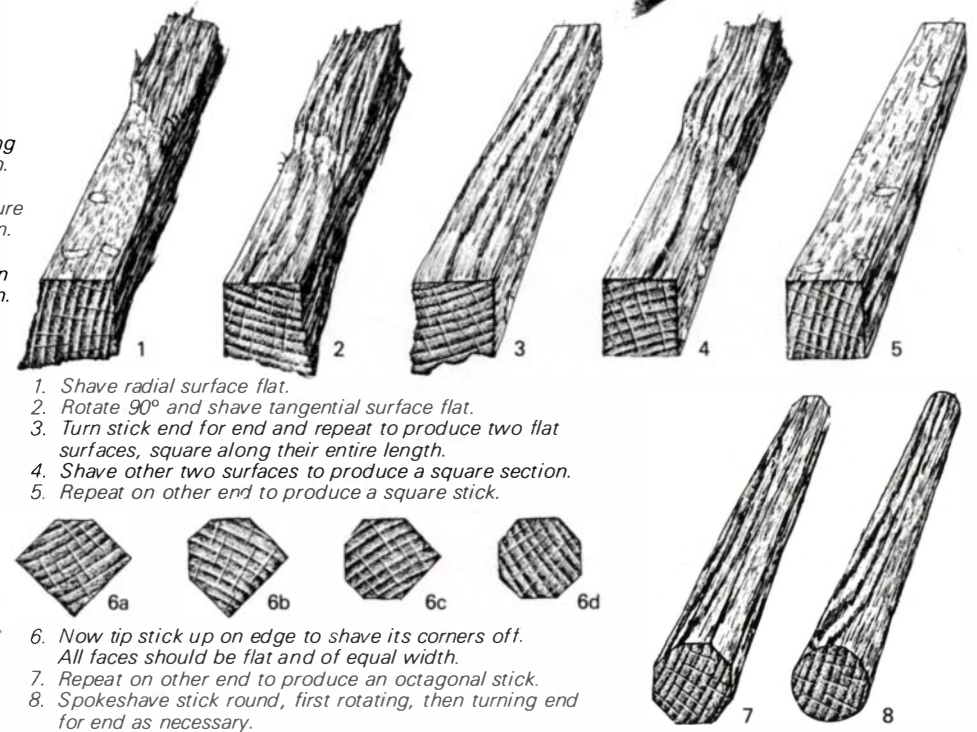
Dub flat side of blade to provide pivot surface for controlling depth of cut.

Fig. 5: The position of drawknife handles



To best aim the edge into the cut, heat and bend handle tangs to align handles with bisector of bevel angle.

Fig. 6: Order of cuts in drawknifing a cylinder



1. Shave radial surface flat.
2. Rotate 90° and shave tangential surface flat.
3. Turn stick end for end and repeat to produce two flat surfaces, square along their entire length.
4. Shave other two surfaces to produce a square section.
5. Repeat on other end to produce a square stick.

- 6a. Now tip stick up on edge to shave its corners off. All faces should be flat and of equal width.
- 6b.
- 6c.
- 6d.
7. Repeat on other end to produce an octagonal stick.
8. Spokeshave stick round, first rotating, then turning end for end as necessary.

hand to bend the heavy side away from the split. Go slowly. You need time to see which way the split is going and to direct it. If you have split firewood only, where you strike a single blow with a maul and pick up the odd pieces, you will be surprised at the control you have with a froe. Sure, wood splits along the grain. But by bending the wood away from the split, you can cause the plane of failure to jump the grain (figure 3 and front cover).

Shaving wood—If I never work another piece of green wood, I will still use my new drawknife and the shaving horse I recently built. These tools are surprisingly handy for all kinds of work. The shaving horse quickly clamps stock of various shapes and sizes so you can shave it, plane it, scrape it, or (heaven forbid) sand it. It doesn't take long to coordinate hand and foot: clamp down, take a stroke, release pressure, move the stock, and clamp down again. You can't do this sort of thing as fast with a bench vise. Your whole body works on the shaving horse, not just your hands and arms. The harder you pull with your knife, the more you push with your leg, and the tighter your stock is clamped. And all the while you're on your butt, building a chair while you sit.

I tried a number of different shaving horses and I like the dumbhead horse best (*FWW* #14, p.4). I tried different drawknives too, and it seems most can be made to work well, if properly sharpened (*FWW* #25, pp.93-94). The angle of the bevel should be relatively small, between 28° and 32°. I

dub the edge on the flat side, the sort of thing that you'd never do to a plane iron. A plane iron is positioned in relation to the surface of the work by the sole of the plane. Only the edge of the blade touches the work and dubbing the back dulls that edge. The drawknife, having no sole, is guided by the back of the blade sliding on the wood (figure 4). You can regulate depth of cut—from ½-in. thick slabs to paper-thin shavings—simply by tilting the handles. To best aim the edge and control the cut, the handles should be parallel to a line that bisects the bevel angle (figure 5). You will have to heat the upper portion of the tangs and rebend the handles of most drawknives to establish this relationship. Some drawknives work better bevel-side down, as this surface provides something to rock the blade on. I find that dubbing the flat face produces a fine pivot surface for sensitive work.

Sawyer showed us how to hold the knife diagonally to the stroke, and to slide it sideways, slicing as we pulled it. He liked long, consistently thick shavings from long, even pulls. As we worked, he would wince at the crackling sound of badly cut wood. Good shavings whisper off the knife. □

Rick Mastelli is associate editor of Fine Woodworking. This summer's Country Workshops will include hand-tool techniques, with Willie Sundqvist; basic country woodcraft, with Daniel O'Hagan; and chairmaking, with John Alexander. For details write Country Workshops, Route 3, Box 221, Marshall, N.C. 28753.

Tool Lovers Get Together

Dengelshtocks and witchets shine at PATINA

by Stanley Wellborn

When was the last time you had the chance to root around in an aging tool chest, inspecting its scorps, trammel points and inshaves? A bunch of tool lovers in the Maryland-Virginia area get together every other month to do just that. The members of the Potomac Antique Tools and Industries Association, PATINA for short, buy, sell, trade, collect and are fascinated by old hand tools. At any meeting they might delve into that tool chest, or examine more exotic fare: witchets, jiggers, grailles, quannets, dengelshtocks and sugar devils—not to mention bick, flagging, chincing, meaking and trunnel irons.

Faced with such variety, some of the members specialize in only one type of tool, or tools from only a certain era. The finest and rarest tools have grown far too valuable for any but the foolhardy or the purist to use, as a single nick or dent may halve the value. But you don't have to collect expensive tools. Harold D. Berry of Bealeton, Va., for example, is a Keen Kutter man. This company vied with Stanley for the mass market in the 19th century, and its tools can be picked up at sales or auctions for reasonable prices. Berry has often bought a whole boxfull of tools just to get one Keen Kutter—and he's got well over a hundred. Asked what it is that fascinates him about Keen Cutters, Berry looked puzzled. "Why, man, they're great tools!"

Dr. Richard F. S. Starr of Purcellville, Va., on the other hand, collects only the finest tools. He specializes in the superb planes made by an Ohioan of the same surname, but no known relation. PATINA members speak of Starr's collection in tones of awe, and are always on the lookout for things that might interest him. "He is *sharp*," one member said. "He hardly ever buys, and never sells."

"You eventually have to concentrate on some period or type of tool just because there are so many of them," said Bill Neyer of Landisville, Pa. "I've had to go into fairly heavy dealing to keep from going broke buying. I've got so much stuff I can't haul the half of it around anymore. On the other hand, if you're careful to stick to items of quality in good condition, it's hard to get burned. Average prices have gone up tenfold or more in the past few years."

The skyrocketing prices of old tools both please and distress the members. "It is good to see their value recognized," says one, "but it makes it hard for a person who is looking for fine old tools to use."

Many of the members seem less interested in buying and selling than in just talking about the tools and the men who made and used them. "In the old days a man wouldn't be seen with the kinds of tools they sell today," says PATINA president Don Paschal. "Pride in your work started with pride in your tools, and somebody who was thinking of hiring a man could find out all he needed to know about him by looking at his tool chest. A man was willing to pay a lot for a tool that was well made because it takes good tools to do good



Kemp White makes a point at a PATINA meeting held at his home in Accokeek, Md. White is an accomplished woodworker who reproduces antique furniture in addition to being an avid tool collector.

work, and he expected them to last a lifetime."

Paschal picked up a folding rule from one of the tables. Carved of ivory and bound in brass, it might have been wrought by Fabergé for the Russian Czar. "This is not a piece of jewelry; it is a tool," he said. "The carpenter or cabinet-maker who owned it used it every working day. Maybe his son used it after him, and his grandson. If you were discussing a job with a man and he pulled this out of his pocket to take a measurement, you could be confident you were dealing with a *craftsman*."

Tool collectors generally agree on the proper categories for old woodworking tools. Three broad classes exist. There is a fairly sharp division between the English tools brought over by colonists and the early American tools, which are very similar but seldom so fine. Then there was a major change after the Civil War, which greatly accelerated the Industrial Revolution in this country. Mass production began to take over, and by about 1880 virtually all the common tools were more or less machine made.

PATINA member Tom Tully is curator of the Smithsonian Institution's collection of hand tools—and a master carpenter. He has developed a nine-step grading system for old tools. Some of the distinctions are pretty fine, but the novice can distinguish the major grades simply by the way collectors

or dealers present their tools at a sale or show: *1st grade*, unused tools in their original packaging or felt-lined cases; *3rd grade*, tools that may have been restored, but are still in original trays or boxes; *6th grade*, rough but usable tools, usually displayed on blankets; *9th grade*, interesting junk all jumbled together in battered milk crates.

"One thing you have to get rid of in grading tools are the concepts of good and bad," cautioned Tully, "Hand tools are expected to be used, and *used up* in some cases. Who am I to say that an axe used by a workman for 40 years that has been worn down almost to the handle is in bad condition? The workman may still be able to get a lot of use out of it. He may love that tool. He may have kept it in very usable condition, but it may look like a piece of junk. What I do have a bias against, I guess, is abused tools. A tool that may be in good condition, but which has evidence of being used by a careless craftsman is a tool that I react against. It is just a personal feeling—because tools are personal things." □

Stanley Wellborn, of Washington, D.C., is a frequent contributor to this magazine. Photo by the author.

EDITOR'S NOTE: PATINA publishes a monthly newsletter; for a subscription send \$10 to Bob Nelson, 2800 64th Street, Chevy Chase, Md. 20785. There are groups of tool lovers dotted all over the country. One of the oldest is the Early American Industries Association, founded in 1933. The EAIA holds its own meetings, publishes a quarterly magazine, a bi-monthly newsletter and a number of books. They maintain a library, award several research grants each year, and keep up-to-date lists of regional and local tool groups. For further information on the EAIA, write John S. Watson, Treasurer, EAIA, PO Box 2128, Empire State Plaza Station, Albany, N.Y. 12220.

This year, Jack Bittner's big auction will be held May 10-12 at the Ramada Inn in Keene, N.H. For the catalog and information write Bittner at RFD #3, Box 54, Putney, Vt. 05346. Richard Crane holds a two-day show and sale in Nashua, N.H. This year's will be on April 2 and 3, and Crane expects to offer 450 to 500 lots of tools. For the catalog and information write Crane, Your Country Auctioneer, Inc., Center Road, Hillsboro, N.H. 03244. Crane and Bittner probably auction more old tools than anybody in the country, but if you can't make one of their sales, keep your eyes peeled for smaller sales in your area—there are good tools to be found at auctions, flea markets, junk shops and garage sales everywhere.

Bittner's Old Tool Jamboree

by Norman Vandal

The old-tool bug is easy to catch. If you've got it, why not enjoy it? Each spring I put all else aside to attend Jack Bittner's Antique Tool Auction. Last May, Bittner's two-day jamboree drew collectors and craftsmen from 19 states, Canada, England, France, New Zealand and the Virgin Islands.

We all gathered in Brattleboro, Vt. to bid on 900 lots of antique tools. There were wooden planes, Stanley planes and English planes, hand-forged axes and adzes and documented 18th-century tools. Coopers' tools, measuring devices, braces, levels and many more rounded out the field. A well written

and illustrated catalog arrived in the mail in ample time for me to convince myself that I couldn't do without this plane or that adze.

For me, the best part of each sale is the preview. Every item is available for handling and inspection—an incredible assortment of specialized wood-working implements. Their subtle lines, exotic woods and brass fittings have the look and feel only generations of use can impart. They tell us of the past and they can help us explore our work in the present. They remind us how windows or stairs or carriages were made, and maybe why. Some tools are

versatile, others perform a single, simple function. All represent the lore of our craft. If you go to a Bittner preview, take your time, look closely, ask questions. It's not often that so many good tools are gathered together.

It always comes as a surprise how much collectors are willing to pay for a tool. Last May, Bittner auctioned two 18th-century American molding planes, one for \$1100, the other for \$750. A Stanley #9 cabinetmakers' block plane went for \$1050, and a brass-bound, red beech Marples Ultimatum brace went for an astonishing \$1250. But the craftsman needn't be discouraged. Good deals were plentiful. Stanley tools, some wooden planes, lots of chisels, drawknives and spokeshaves went for reasonable prices, so did broad axes, framing and corner chisels, and boring machines. Stanley bench planes in perfect condition sold for \$20 to \$60, below catalog prices for new planes, and usable molding planes went for \$8 to \$25 each. English brass or iron wood-filled planes sold below their appraised value. I bought a like-new Norris coffin-shaped smoother, reputedly the finest smooth plane ever made, for \$150, far below its average retail of \$225. There was something for just about everyone—of those who attended, 9 out of 10 went home with a new old tool. □



Auctioneer Jack Bittner calls for bids on one of the hundreds of old tools that he put on the auction block last May. Bittner's two-day auction is an annual affair, a meeting place for collectors, craftsmen and other lovers of old tools.

Norman Vandal builds period furniture and architectural components in Roxbury, Vt. Photo by the author.

Designing for Machine Craft

Desmond Ryan's route to handsome boxes

by Roger Holmes

For nearly ten years Desmond Ryan has been making little wooden boxes—boxes for all sorts of things, from jewelry worth fortunes to sentimental trinkets. He makes boxes one at a time and in batches of ten or twenty, with traditional hand tools as well as with modern machinery. His favorite machine has become the overarm router that stands in the middle of his shop; Ryan has learned to use this router with the sensitivity usually associated with a handtool, and his designs capitalize on the machine's strong points. He's succeeded in blending craft with industrial design, handwork with machine work—he is toolmaker, jigmaker and old-fashioned bench craftsman all rolled into one.

Last fall I visited Ryan at his shop, in a 176-year-old paper mill in the town of Maidstone, 37 miles east of London. The mill sits in a tight wooded valley, and Ryan's shop, a long narrow room lit by a wall of windows, is on the second floor of a timber-clad building. It is a large shop for one man, but Ryan prefers to work alone. The extra space is for making furniture, a side of his work overshadowed by the success of his boxes. "Nobody actually needs boxes," he told me, "they aren't necessary like tables, chairs and cabinets. But it is surprising how many people indulge themselves."

Few craft woodworkers have exploited the router as thoroughly as Ryan has for his boxes. Almost every woodworker has a router; they are cheap, take up little space, and can perform a bewildering array of operations. The router can replace whole chests of molding planes, hollows, rounds, gouges and more. It works quickly and precisely—sometimes too easily. The unwavering accuracy of a routed surface doesn't complement

every design. Ryan therefore designs with the router in mind. He derives the basic shapes and joints of many of his boxes from it, and often a routed detail will tie a whole design together. The jewelry box pictured at the top of p. 61 is a good example. A coved rabbet frames the ends of the box when closed, and it connects with the routed handles on the four trays when they are set into the open box for display. "It is one object closed and a different object when open," explained Ryan. "I usually try to do this with boxes. I try to keep them simple on the outside, and when you open them, there is a more complex but visually harmonious interior."

One-off boxes need a lot of handwork. Ryan's batch-production boxes are almost entirely machine-made, and usually routed out of a solid block of wood: no assembly necessary. Some of his production ideas develop from one-off commissions, like the paint box (p. 61) and some of his game boards; others come while playing around with ideas and with the machine itself.

Batch production has different requirements for design, production and materials than one-offs. The designer must eliminate complicated, time-consuming constructions or details. These can be absorbed when done once, but are prohibitive when they must be repeated over and over. A logical succession of simple, quick and accurate operations is the key to successful production, and there isn't much margin for error. "You have got to have an absolute sure-fire way of controlling production operations," says

Ryan. "If you work to the sort of precision possible with the machine and you fit one piece into another, the consistency has got to be there."

Ryan chooses his materials as carefully as he constructs his jigs. "When I'm doing a production piece," he says, "I don't see individual pieces of wood. With the hexagonal boxes (p. 63), for example, I wasn't trying to create interest in the wood. I used walnut or rosewood for their color against which I contrasted an interesting wood, amboyna, which is decorative in itself, but is a bit like wallpaper. One box lid was different from another, but it was really the color and texture I was after, not a specific piece of wood."

I wondered if he couldn't just as easily make his boxes from metal or plastic. "I suppose I use wood rather than metal because I like the warmth and feel of it. It also machines well, handles easily and can be worked with hand tools." The ideal wood? He laughed, "I suppose it would be something like a firm cheese that you could work and harden up afterwards."

Having worked on the design, made the first jigs and started a half dozen prototypes, Ryan is liable to abandon the project. "That happens quite a lot. Either I reject them because I am not happy with them visually, or I feel that the price is going to be too high to justify finishing them off. It is very costly."

A box that has made it past these obstacles must still prove itself. "I like to leave boxes lying around and observe people handling them," Ryan said. "The longer they keep one in their hand, perhaps turning it over absent-mindedly while talking, the more successful the box."

Ryan's pleasure in the boxes is designing them, figuring out the jigs, and wrestling with the machine, seeing what he can make it do. "The trouble," he confesses, "is really that I lose interest when I've made all the jigs and done the first one. My production pieces are never in that high a production, usually tens or twenties. I spend perhaps two or three weeks with a pro-

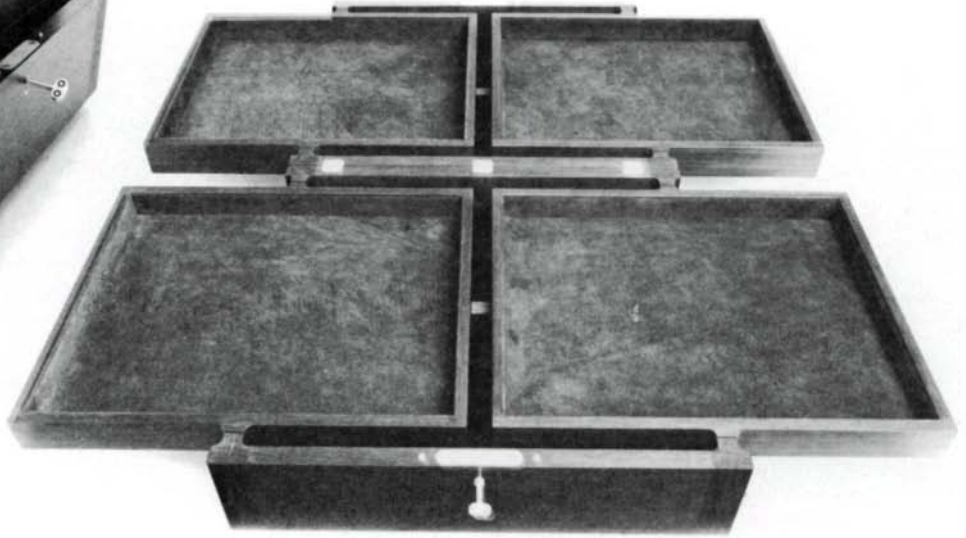
duction piece, take it to a certain stage and then it gets left and taken on to the next stage later. There is never enough time between commissions to finish them." They are not, therefore, great money makers. Friends, steady clients and exhibitions take most of them off his hands.

Recently, Ryan has spent more time making furniture, a change from boxes that he finds stimulating. "Boxes are an isolated thing and fit into whatever scheme of decoration people have," he says. "Furniture has got to fit in with what is already there." At first glance, his chunky furniture seems much different from his precise boxes. But the same functional economy and attention to detail is there. Other ideas carry over, too. He doesn't want the wood to compete with the form, in boxes or furniture, so he builds table tops, for instance, of thin strips of wood rather than wide, figured boards.

Ryan is interested in doing more with decorative effects, but he's wary of them. Game boards whose surfaces are necessarily decorative were an easy first step. "But I can't bring myself to use decoration much on furniture," he said. "I want to use a decorative surface without destroying the form. Perhaps I'm afraid of it and don't want to push too hard in case something strange comes out." He has firm beliefs about furniture, and if they seem old-fashioned, they are nevertheless sound. "You make furniture to be used. There are similarities with sculpture, painting, and so on, but I can't accept furniture that doesn't do what it should—be useful."

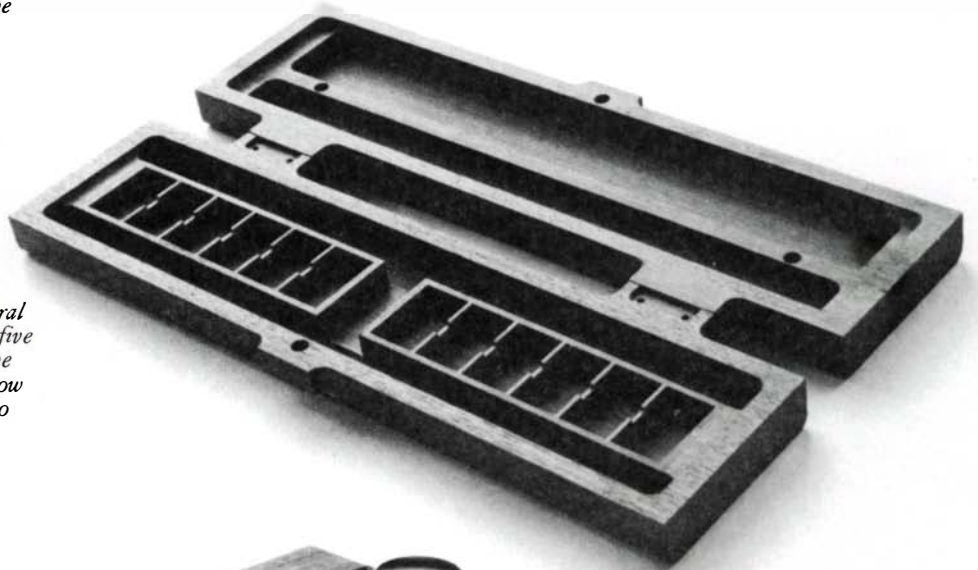
Ryan has been interested in furniture since he was a boy; after technical school, he studied furniture and industrial design at Beckenham Art College and at the Royal College of Art, where he received a masters degree in 1965.

All this college training—eight years studying design—may seem odd to Americans who are more likely to knock together a bench, buy a few tools and open for business, picking up design and woodworking skills as they go. The British

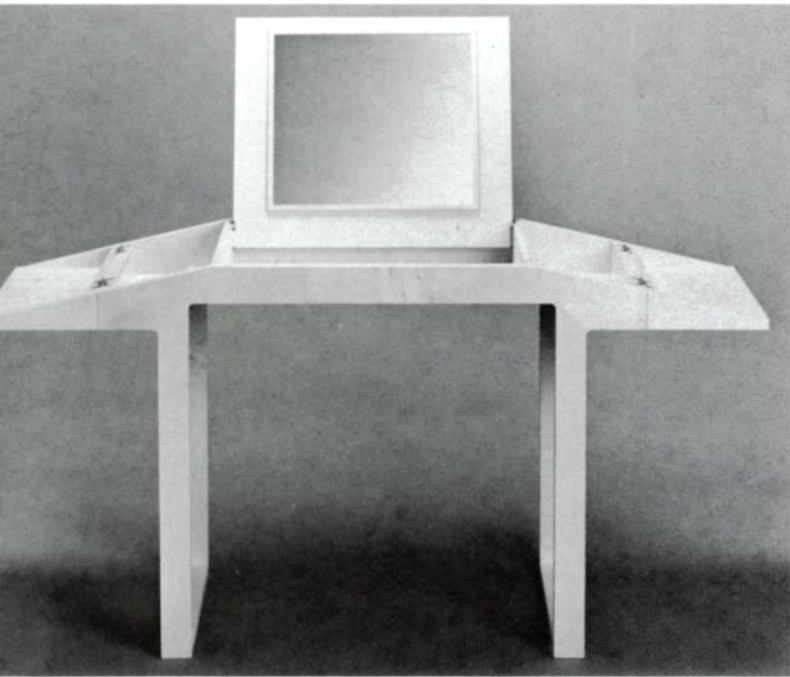


A museum in Munich, Germany, commissioned this rosewood box (19½ in. by 16½ in. by 9 in. when closed) to display as well as to store its changing collection of jewelry. Ryan wove the function of the box together with its appearance. The reveals on the end frames set off the panels against the seamless surface of the box. When the box is open, the upper of the two panels in each half can be removed, and the four trays positioned by brass pins. The curve echoes throughout the box: the coved rabbet bends around the mitered corners, the handles flow into the trays—even the hinges, lock plate and dead bolt are radiused.

The characters of production and of one-off work contrast in these two paint boxes made by Ryan. The one at right (unfinished) is his most complicated production piece, requiring several cutters, jigs, router-fence settings and about five hours to machine. It was designed to serve the basic needs of any watercolorist. The box below was commissioned by a professional painter to hold exactly what he needed for his tramps around the countryside. Though there is as much machine work in this as in the production box, it has more personality than the production box.



Photos of jewelry box and of paint box, left, by Ken Adams.



Ken Adams

Ryan's dressing table, commissioned in 1975, is really three boxes on a stand, but boxes and stand have merged—the rails of the stand are also the sides of the boxes. The table is 42 in. long when closed, 13½-in. wide, 29 in. high and is finished with cellulose lacquer.

have always followed a more formal path. Until the 1960s, many makers of craft furniture endured an apprenticeship of five or even seven years, or else spent several years as a paying student in a workshop. During the last twenty years, however, students from art and design colleges have chosen to make, as well as to design, for their livings.

Ryan was one of the first of this generation. A year in industry followed college and convinced him that making was as important to him as designing. "Industry was too restrictive," he said. "Designing on paper at drawing boards is like composing music that is never played. I strongly believe that you should design as much in the workshop as on paper, by making mockups and prototypes as well as finished pieces."

He is a self-taught woodworker and doesn't think of himself as a craftsman. He said, "I suppose designer-craftsman is the closest one can get to a classification. What fascinates me most is problem solving: linking the object's function to its appearance and juggling them to get the most exciting result with the least compromise."

Like many designer-craftsmen, most of Ryan's work is commissioned. "I think people like to buy something from the person who has made it," he said. "They are buying a bit of somebody's life, almost."

Today, at 41, Ryan is established and earns a living from his workshop. But it has been a long time coming. He subsidized his work for many years by part-time teaching, but he found that this proved to be a distraction that took the edge off his business drive. Each time he dropped a day's teaching his own work improved. Still, it wasn't until 1978 that he could afford to work wood full time.

I asked him about all the eager newcomers setting up workshops today, what were the prospects for them? He thought that a lot of them would fall by the wayside. "It's not just training you need, you have got to be right for it, it's more of a vocation. It's got to be a vocation to work for the money you get and the long hours you put in." He paused and continued, "Every job that I take on, I treat as if it is the one and only thing in my life, and I've got to do it to the utmost. This isn't necessary if you just want to make a living, but it is if you want to say anything. That is what I want to do—it is a means of expression, I suppose." Momentarily embarrassed by his own profundity, he fussed with his pipe and added with a smile, "though I don't know what it is I'm trying to say..."

Whatever it is, his clients get the message: "One of the nicest comments I've received was from a client who said, 'You know, Des, every time I come down in the morning those objects of yours give me pleasure and I see something new in them.' All the effort that I had put into things that seem so simple paid off." □

Roger Holmes is assistant editor of this magazine. For more on pin routing see FWW #29, p. 63.

How Ryan makes hexagonal boxes

Ryan is a master at coaxing precise work out of his overarm router. His secret is accurate jigs. A jig may be just a piece of wood clamped to the router table or it may be a more complex construction that guides the cut by means of a template. Either way, careful preparation and set-up are essential.

Much of Ryan's work is pin-routed, clamped to a baseboard which is attached to a template. The template guides the cut by running against a pin set into the router table; the pin's centerline is the same as the cutter's above it. With a rise-and-fall table, this set-up is ideal for excavating solid blocks of wood to make boxes.

The little hexagonal box pictured here is made in batches of ten or twenty, and takes advantage of production economies even at that small scale. Ryan pin-routs the inside of the solid block, and routs the foot and the lid rabbet against a fence. He uses the disc sander like a milling machine to grind the outside surfaces of box and lid to size while keeping their edges sharp. The lid is about $\frac{1}{64}$ in. undersize (for what Ryan calls a "rattling good fit"); it closes with a satisfying click. Here are some tips on making jigs like Ryan's.

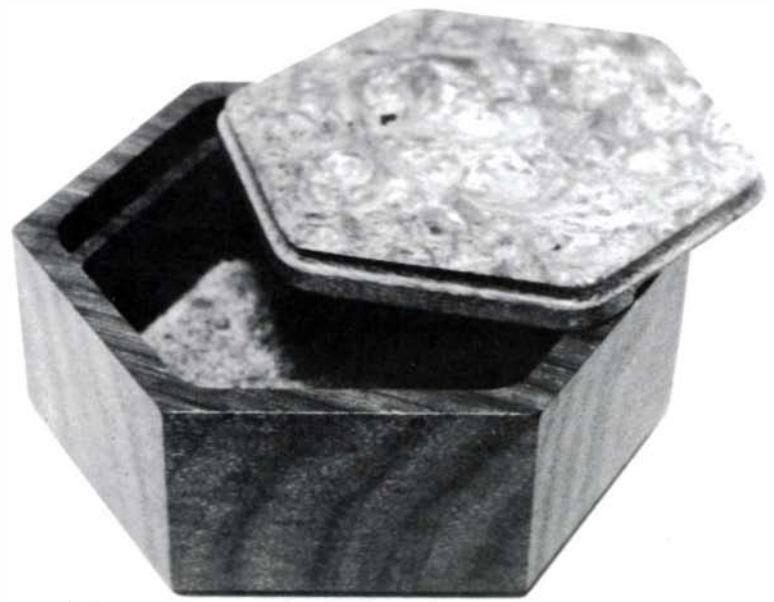
Preliminary jigs: Use rough-and-ready jigs to test rough-and-ready designs. You can even nail or screw the prototype blank to the baseboard and make the template from wood—the jig will be used only once or twice. Work from the design to the jig and back again to eliminate small errors and inefficiencies—they make a big difference when repeated tens or hundreds of times.

Production jigs: After the bugs have been worked out and the final design has been decided, make production jigs. They need not be expensive or complicated, just sturdy and accurate—they must produce exactly the same cuts time after time. Jigs should be heavy enough to help counteract the router's torque and large enough to keep hands well away from the cutter, but they should not be unwieldy. Chipboard is ideal for baseboards. The template gets the most wear; good template materials are mild steel and Formica.

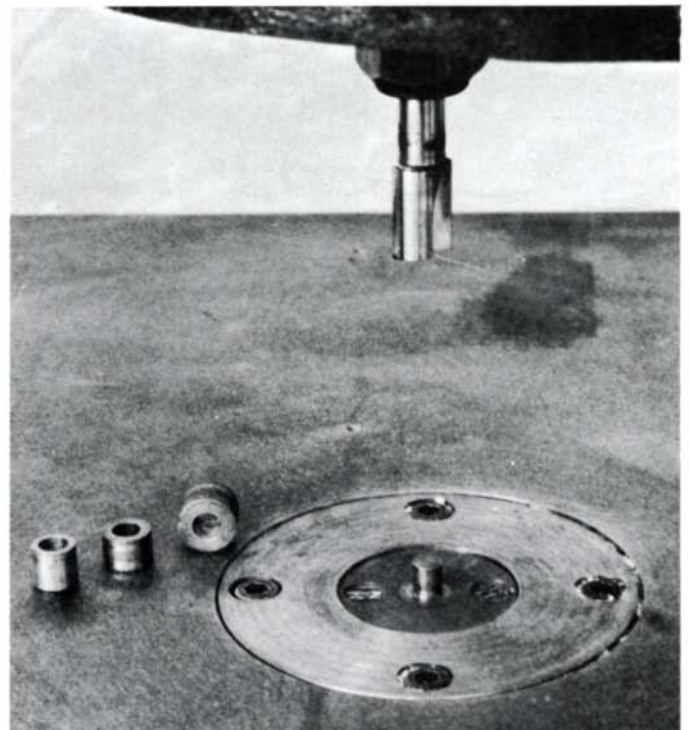
The template size: The size of the template is determined by the sizes of the router cutter and the pin. If the pin and cutter are the same size, the routed shape or opening will be exactly the size of the template. If the pin is smaller than the cutter, a routed opening will be larger and an outside shape smaller than the template by the difference in their respective diameters. For example: A $\frac{1}{4}$ -in. pin and a $\frac{1}{2}$ -in. cutter will produce an opening $\frac{1}{4}$ in. larger than the template. Likewise, a pin larger than the cutter will produce a smaller opening.

Pin collars: Ryan routs different sized openings in the same piece, without changing cutters, pins or jigs, by slipping collars of various diameters over a single pin. The smallest collar produces the largest opening, and larger collars produce the smaller openings.

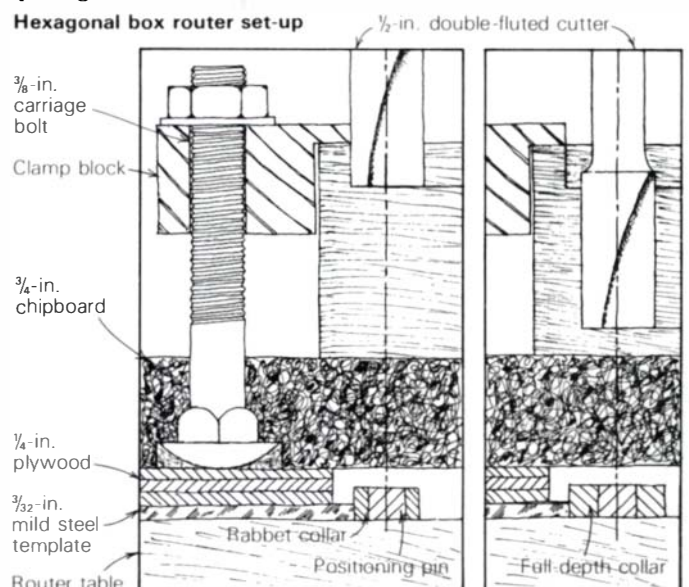
The cutter: Ryan uses high-speed steel router cutters. A carbide edge lasts longer, but a high-speed steel edge can be honed. Sharpening a fluted cutter minutely alters its diameter, so check this regularly and alter the jig to compensate. Ryan hones both face and bevel of the cutting edges with a triangular Arkansas slipstone. He sharpens after every four or five boxes for such hard stuff as rosewood, to produce surfaces that require only light sanding or scraping to finish.



The design of this rosewood and amboyna hexagonal box takes advantage of the overarm router's production strengths.



Different sized collars (above) can be slipped over the router's pin. By bearing against a template, they control the size of the rabbet or box opening as shown below.



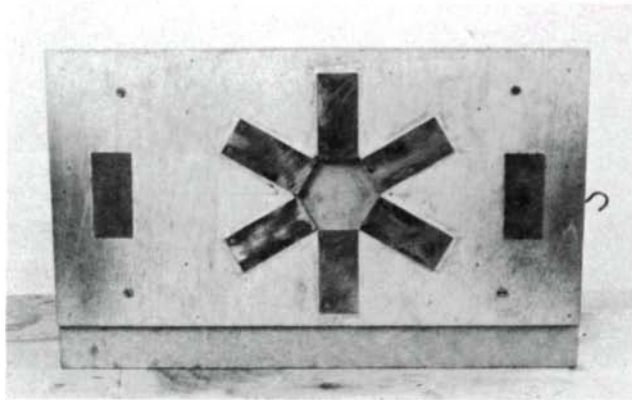
The jig

To make the router jig for his hexagonal box, Ryan started with the template. First he laid out the exact size of the template in the center of a piece of $\frac{1}{4}$ -in. plywood. He positioned the $\frac{3}{32}$ -in. metal strips, each the width of a box side, and screwed them in place. Taking the strips off, he cut a slightly oversized hole in the plywood so the strips would project slightly beyond the opening. Next he screwed the strips

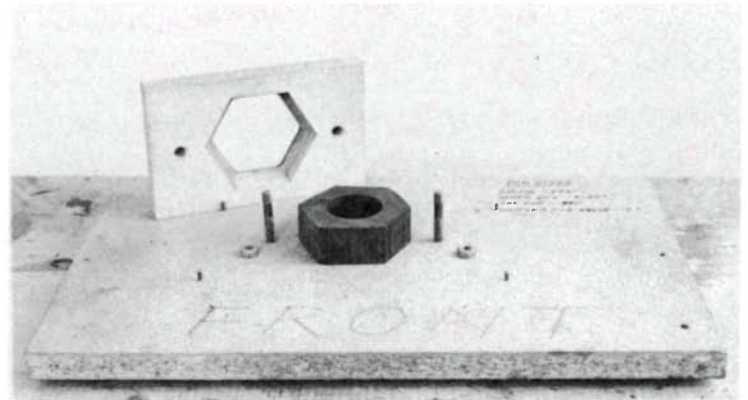
back in place, tapping them into exact position. He ran epoxy glue around them to ensure against movement. Finally he flushed off the strips and screwed two additional ones at the two ends for stability (photo A).

To make the baseboard (B), Ryan positioned the clamping block and its two hanger bolts, transferring the template position to the baseboard top by measurement. The box blank must be held directly over the template, and the clamp bolts must clear the router,

yet be close enough to exert direct pressure on the blank. Ryan bolted the hard maple clamping block in place, and routed out its center by guiding the template on the pin collar for the box's rabbet—the largest opening to be routed. Then he enlarged this hole to comfortably fit a blank, chopping to within $\frac{1}{4}$ in. of the clamp's top surface. The fit need not be tight—three chisel-pointed panel pins embedded in the baseboard keep the blank from twisting while it's being routed.



A



B

The box

Ryan starts a batch of boxes by band-sawing the blanks about $\frac{3}{16}$ in. oversize, from selected rosewood or walnut blanks planed to final thickness. He drills the waste from the center of each blank, then clamps it to the jig. He places the first (smallest) collar on the router pin and routs the rabbet for the lid to its full depth in one cut (C). Using the second (largest) collar and three depth stops, he routs the inside of the box to its full depth (D). Safe depth depends on the wood, the cutter size and sharpness, and on the power of the machine. With the final collar, minutely smaller than the second, he takes a finishing cut of a couple of hundredths of an inch to remove tears and burns

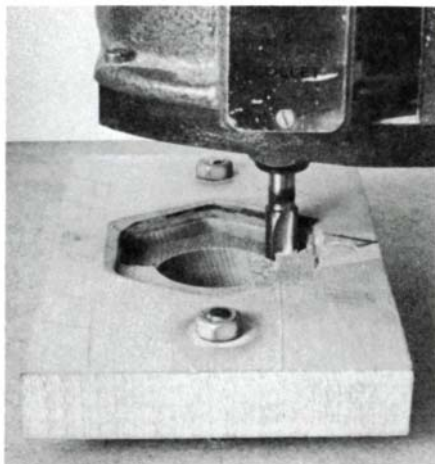
left from the heavier cuts. As before, he goes to full depth in three steps.

All router work should be moved into the cutter against the direction of rotation, otherwise the cutter self-feeds and grabs the work. Sometimes difficult grain requires feeding in the same direction as the router rotates—in tough spots like these, Ryan hogs the waste in small bites and finishes by careful back-cutting, making sure his clamps are tight and his hands well clear.

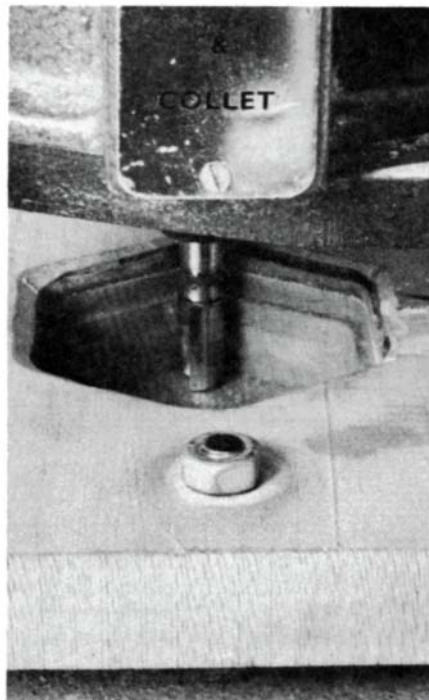
With the inside cuts completed, Ryan moves to the 12-in. disc sander to shape the outside (E).

The sanding jig is glued up from two pieces of $\frac{1}{4}$ -in. plywood the exact size of the box rabbet, but one of them has radiused corners to fit the routed opening. Inserted into the box, the sharp-cornered piece forms the jig's template. It is pushed against a brass strip that is fixed to the edge of a board clamped on the sander's worktable. The distance between the strip and the disc determines the thickness of the box's walls.

Ryan sands around the box several times, taking care not to overheat the wood. When the boxes have all been sanded with 80-grit, he changes the disc to 120-grit and moves the board with the brass strip fractionally closer to the disc for a finishing pass.



C



D



E

Back at the router, Ryan clamps a fence to the table, sets a depth stop and routs a foot on the bottom of the box using a double-fluted cutter ground to a very small radius (F). This completes the machining.

Ryan hand-sands the outside faces with two grades of fine paper glued on opposite sides of a flat board. He draws the box across the paper, taking care not to lose the sharp edges, then sands small, crisp chamfers. He removes small ridges on the inside with tightly-rolled sandpaper.



F

The lid

To make the box lid, Ryan planes, thicknesses and bandsaws to size solid padouk blanks, aligning the points of the hexagon with the grain direction. He veneers the blanks top and bottom with amboyna, the richly figured burl wood of padouk. After veneering, the lids are rough-sanded on the disc (G) to remove glue and tape—a difficult and risky operation when hand-holding such a thin piece.



G

He shapes the lid on the disc sander the same way he shaped the box. A plywood jig (H) is cut the exact size of the lid; it should allow for slight shrinkage in the box. A rabbet in the jig forms the template and lets the jig clear the brass fence and just touch the sanding disc. Small radii worked on the underside of the template fit the lid to the box rabbet. Four tiny pins set in the jig hold the lid in place during the machining—their holes are lost in the wild figure of the amboyna.



H

On the router, Ryan works a decorative rabbet around the top of the lid (I), using the rounded cutter that routed the box foot. As he routs, he works around each corner with a series of small cuts, keeping the edge of the lid hard against the fence. Any difficult grain is back-cut—very carefully.



I

Next he routs a stopped rabbet on two adjacent sides of the bottom of the lid (J). Pushing on this corner pivots the lid on the rabbet stops and pops it up for removal. Ryan uses the same set-up as before but moves the fence so the width of this rabbet will just exceed that of the ledge in the box. The depth remains the same. Pencil lines on the baseboard mark where to begin and end the cut. This rabbet starts $\frac{3}{16}$ in. from one point of the hexagon and moves through an adjacent point, ending $\frac{3}{16}$ in. from a third. It includes two sides that run across the grain direction of the veneered padouk so the thin division between the lid's upper and lower rabbets will be end grain and not weaker edge grain.



J

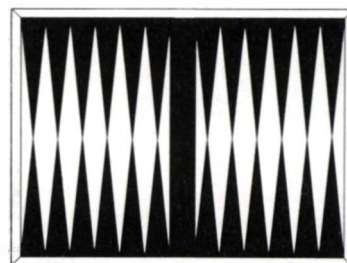
Ryan finish-sands the lid on the fine-paper boards and then he lightly chamfers its edges. Finally he wipes the box and lid with teak oil, keeping the oil clear of the bottom where the suede must be glued, then he stamps his name on the bottom.

—R.H.

Backgammon Board

Solid wood and geometry instead of veneer

by John Boyland



The most common way to make a backgammon board is to cut veneers into triangles and diamonds and then glue them to a ground. The method is fairly easy and the results look nice, but for those who don't like working in veneers, the same project done in solid wood can be a challenge. If you have ever tried a solid wood backgammon board, you probably discovered as I did that it's almost impossible to cut 24 identical triangles and 12 identical diamonds individually. The pieces are just too small and the angles too acute to be handled safely, or with any accuracy. When you try to glue

them up, the edges won't close for a tight, clean joint.

For almost a year I puzzled over a way to get all the pieces to come out right and finally concluded that cutting separate pieces wasn't the answer. I discovered the job could be done by using applied geometry.

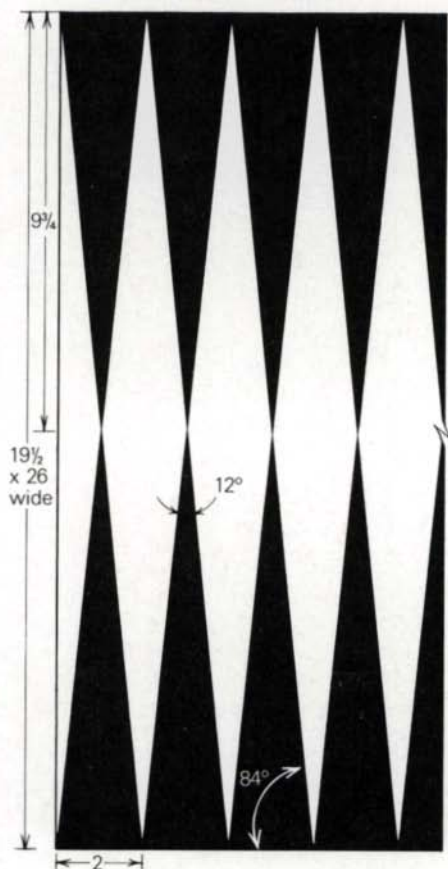
The method I developed involves ripping boards of contrasting colored woods into strips, and then gluing them into a solid panel. This panel is then ripped at an angle into bias-cut strips which, when crosscut to the proper length, can be glued up to make the finished playing board.

1. I begin by making a full-scale layout of the board; its overall dimensions are 19½ in. by 26 in. For a board having triangles with 2-in. bases, the best angle for the sides is 84°, as shown in figure 1. You can alter the size of the board, but be sure to measure the correct angles for the triangles from the full-scale layout for that size board. When laying out, the points of the opposing triangles must line up.

Next, select your 4/4 stock from woods of contrasting colors and compatible shrinkage and expansion rates, such as cherry and poplar or walnut and ash. Rip the stock into eleven strips 46 in. long and joint them to exactly 2 in. wide. You can skip jointing them by sawing with a planer blade or smooth-cutting carbide-tipped saw. Take care to hold the stock against the fence, and feed it smoothly to avoid saw scoring and burning.

2. Pieces cut, glue them into a single panel. To minimize waste and compensate for saw kerfs in re-ripping, stagger them at 12°, as shown below. The outside strips are shifted to provide a foot for clamping. After I've dry-clamped the assembly and checked it for fit, I strike a pencil line to index the pieces for final glue-up.

Fig. 1: Layout for board triangles



3. While the glue is curing, make a taper jig for re-ripping the strips. For the size board I use, the re-rip angle is 12° measured from the front of the table, or 78° measured from the back of the table. You can use any type of taper jig to cut the angle, *FWW* #9, Winter '77, p. 37 shows one. Before ripping the glued-up stock, map out all the cuts to make sure you will end with enough pieces—the location of the first rip is critical. I begin, as shown below and in the photo at the top of the facing page, near the glue line between the eighth and ninth strips from the fence.

Fig. 3: Cutting initial angle with taper jig

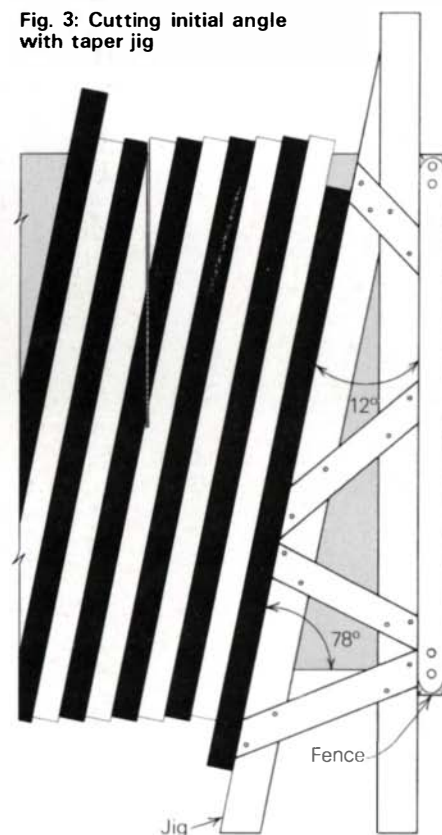
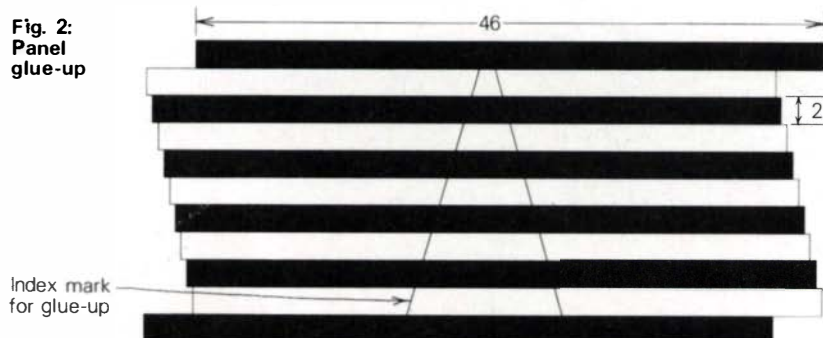
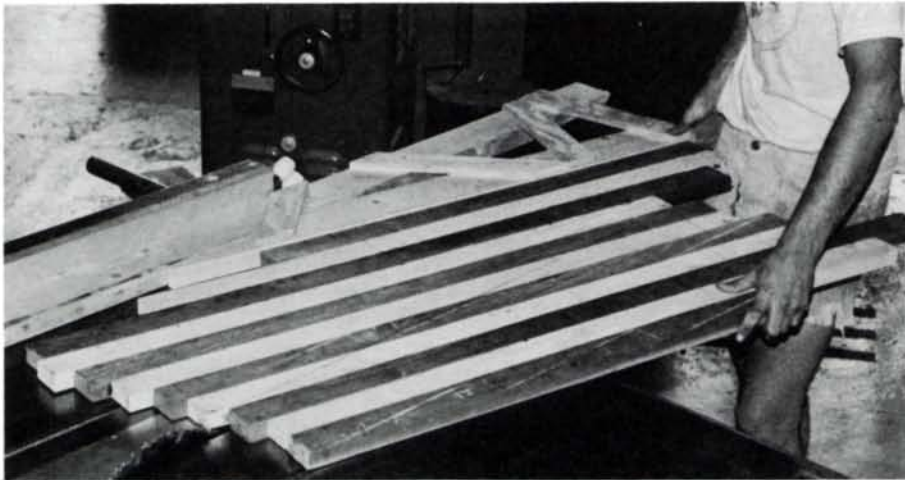


Fig. 2: Panel glue-up





Use a 12° taper jig to establish the initial angle for the bias-cut strips. Rip should begin on a glue line between the eighth and ninth strips, halving the panel.

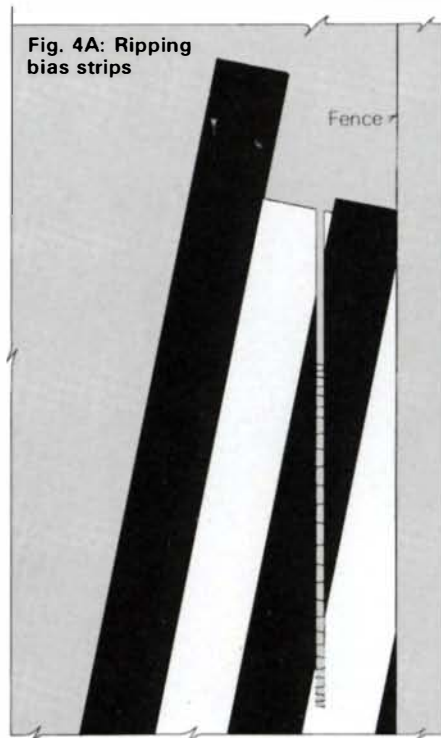


Fig. 4A: Ripping bias strips

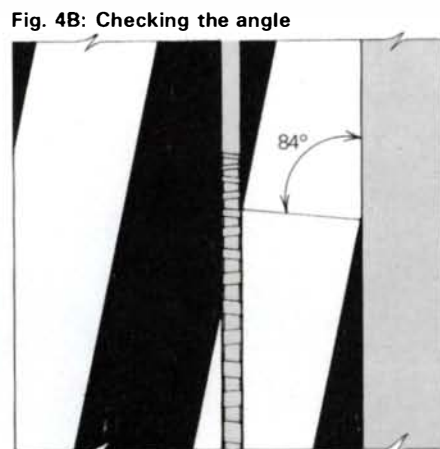


Fig. 4B: Checking the angle

When strips are ripped to proper width, diamond points will align at 84° to edge.



Fig. 5: Crosscutting strips to length

Saw at 84° to edge.

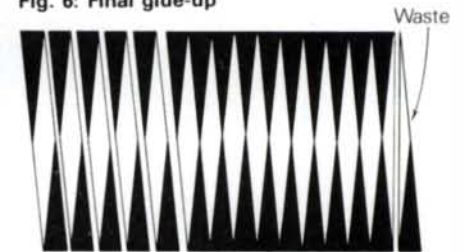
4. After making the angled cut, put the jig aside, then rip in the normal way, as shown in figure 4A. You will cut the panels into bias-cut strips about 2 in. wide, producing a series of alternating light and dark diamonds.

The fence setting is critical if the tips of the playing triangles are to line up. Check the first piece you rip. Instead of measuring the sides of the diamonds, connect the points of two dark diamonds across a light diamond. I use a protractor to check that this line falls at an angle of 84° to the edge (figure 4B). If the first piece checks out correctly, the fence is set to the correct width, and I go ahead with the ripping. Otherwise I re-adjust the fence until it's right.

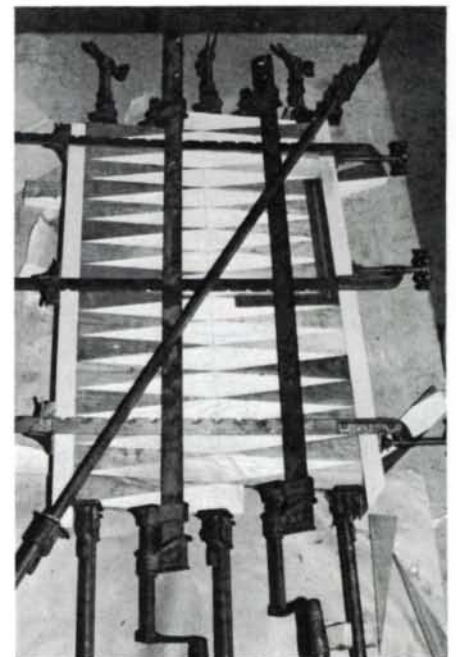
5. To produce the dark playing triangles, cross-cut the strips through the dark diamonds. The cross-cuts must be at 84° to the strips' edges (figure 5), and the finished strips must be the same length. The tips of the diamonds get ripped, but I add a molding to the finished board that covers them. The cross-cutting should yield 15 bias-cut strips. Only 14 are needed, but I glue all of them and trim off the excess later.

6. Cutting complete, the strips can be arranged in the proper order (figure 6), and dry-clamped for fit. I use clamp cauls running along the base of the playing triangles on each side of the board; this keeps the assembly from sliding along the glue lines as pressure is applied. Waxed paper or newsprint between the cauls and the board will prevent the cauls from sticking during assembly. A diagonal clamp is used to square up the board (photo, below).

Fig. 6: Final glue-up



A. Assemble 15 crosscut strips. B. Glue up. C. Trim to yield 13 playing triangles.



Cauls along bases of strips maintain panel alignment during glue-up. A diagonal clamp must be used to square the assembly.

7. Once the glue has cured, the clamps can be removed and the board trimmed square to yield 12 playing triangles, plus one extra in the middle to be covered by the bar. To clean up the glue lines, you can pass the assembly through a 20-in. planer if you have access to one, or you can plane and sand it by hand. After clean-up, the board can be halved and hinged, or mounted in a table. If you set the board into a frame, be sure to leave enough room in the frame's groove for seasonal movement. □

John Boyland teaches industrial arts in Orange, Va. Photos by Jimmy Abbott.

The Appalachian Dulcimer

How Warren May makes traditional instruments

by Billy F. Best

Visitors walking past the Upstairs Gallery in Berea, Ky., are likely to hear dulcimer music. The player, and the instrument maker, is Warren A. May, who has been making dulcimers for nine years. Because there is no definitive standard, dulcimers tend to be one-of-a-kind projects that allow the maker to take advantage of available sizes of wood, and to vary the overall shape, the decorative scroll carving, the shape of the sound holes, and even the number of strings. Four years ago, when he was making instruments at the rate of two per week, May realized that certain shapes and sizes no longer varied from one to the next. He'd settled the length of the fretboard and its fret spacing, the shape and size of the pegbox, scroll, and tailpiece. Why, he asked himself, was he still making these parts one at a time?

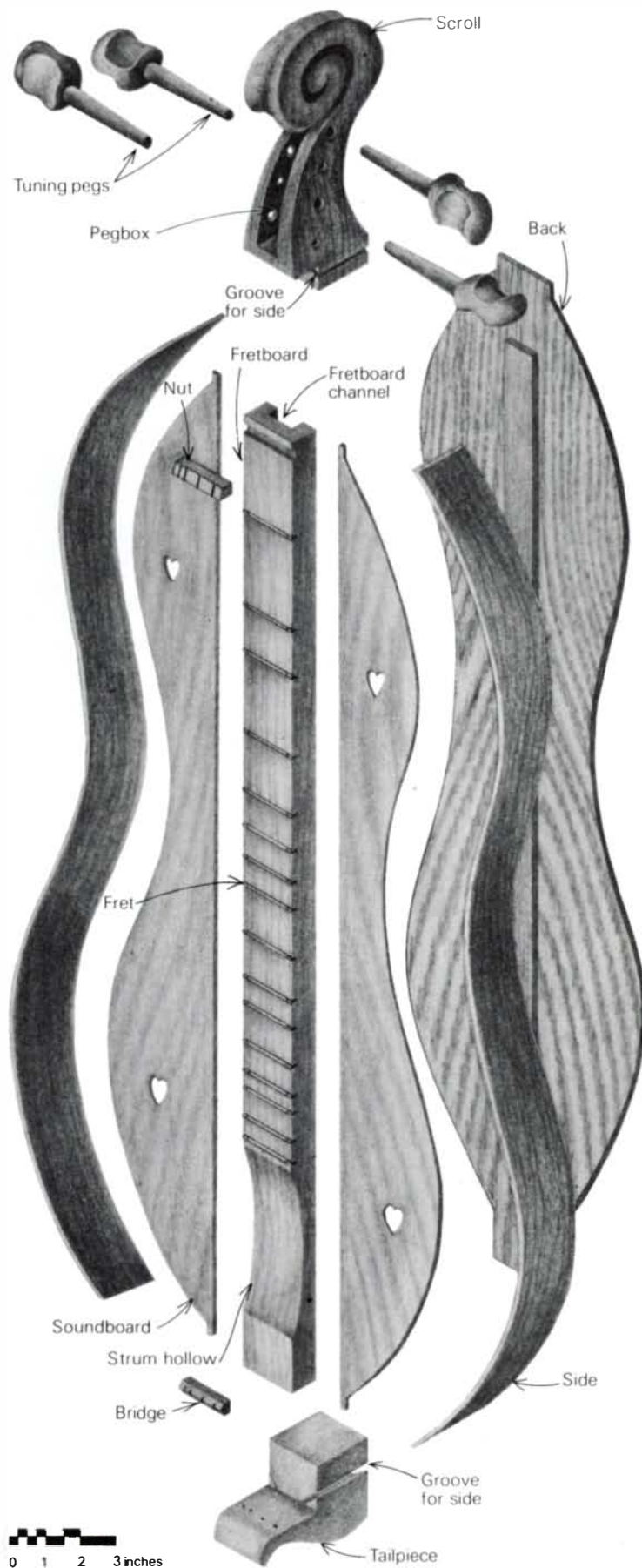
By applying production techniques, jigs, and time-saving ingenuity, he figured he could make more, and better, dulcimers. May will make about 400 instruments this year, yet finds he has more time to make music as well. By building around a standard framework (composed of pegbox, tailpiece, and fretboard), and by making multiples of only those other parts of the instrument that don't change, May frees himself from routine tasks, finds time to search out unusually figured wood, and can custom-build body shapes to suit individual customers' preferences. If he has a fine piece of spruce a little wider than usual, he won't cut away good wood, he'll just make a wide dulcimer.

What follows are some of the ways May has improved both the production and the musical quality of his instruments, without compromising his freedom to design.

May has established a straightforward routine for pegboxes: He squares up the stock, bandsaws the rough shape, and tablesaws the tapers. He drills out the channel with a Forstner bit, then forms the scroll with a router-equipped pantograph. Then he rounds the edges with a router, flap-sands, and takes his time carving the finishing touches with a penknife.

Cutting the grooves for the frets is an exacting job. They have to be correctly spaced, or the instrument won't play in tune. They have to be the right depth and width, else the fret-wire inserts won't fit properly. Instead of cutting the grooves one at a time, May uses a home-made gang-saw based on pillow blocks, with a sliding table made with drawer glides (photo, facing page). A saw-sharpening shop ground the teeth of the inexpensive 4-in. blades (from Sears) to make a 0.020-in. kerf for the fret wire. The next time he changes blades ("It only runs four hours a year. . ."), May plans to use industrial quality. One extra-thick blade cuts the groove for the nut. This rig can saw two fretboards per minute. May channels the underside of the fretboard as far as the strum hollow with a dado saw. Then he shapes the strum hollow with a bandsaw and a standing belt sander.

Any bandsaw would do to make the tops, backs, and sides, but May converted a 3-HP meat bandsaw that lets him deal



with difficult woods (like the poplar timbers he salvaged from a 100-year-old house in town) without bogging down.

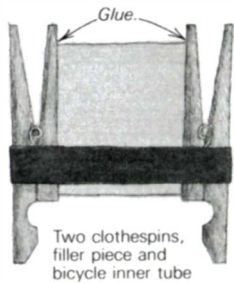
Instead of beading the overhanging edges of the top and back with scrapers and carving tools, a 45-minute job that risked catching grain, or slipping and drawing blood, May uses a Dremel tool as a router. The sharpening shop re-ground a carbide router bit to May's design. Then May had the shank turned to fit the Dremel. Now the beading takes four minutes, and even a curly maple top is no problem.

May has abandoned full-instrument jigs. He feels that he gets better joints by free-clamping the parts of the instrument. This method allows him to vary body shapes easily, even though the length of the instruments remains the same.

May glues the two pieces of the soundboard to the channeled fretboard, forming a stiff, hollow-bottomed assembly. He bookmatches the back by jointing the glueline, taping the pieces together on the outside, and setting them up on the bench like a shallow tent, with the tape on the bottom. They are held in position by nails around the edges. When the tent is pressed flat by a weighted board, the nails spring the joint tight. This works with any size board and any irregular shape. When the top-assembly, back, pegbox and tailpiece are glued together, they form an open-sided framework.

The bookmatched sides are all the same depth and thickness because they must fit the standard grooves in the pegbox and tailpiece, but their length can vary according to the size and shape of the body. May soaks and overbends each side on an adjustable form made from a piece of plywood with dowels inserted to hold the sides upright. Finishing nails (covered with plastic straws to protect the wood from stains) are driven into the plywood to outline the shape. The exact shape isn't critical. May inserts one end in the tailpiece groove, then clamps and glues his way toward the pegbox, wiggling-in the bent sides as he goes. He clamps them in place

with spring clamps which he alternates with clothespin clamps he makes in his shop (left). When he gets near the pegbox, he estimates the length needed to fill the groove, cuts off the waste, and slips the side into place. This operation determines the final shape and the strength of the finished instrument, so May takes his time here, averaging about ten minutes per side.



May has found that innumerable glue blocks around the sides are unnecessary, so he uses them only at points where the side is liable to spring in during glue-up. He uses interior bracing only around sound holes (where edges might catch on clothing), and in extra-wide instruments where he feels the back is bound to bow. "If they'd bow out," he says, "it would be all right, but when they bow in, they look terrible."

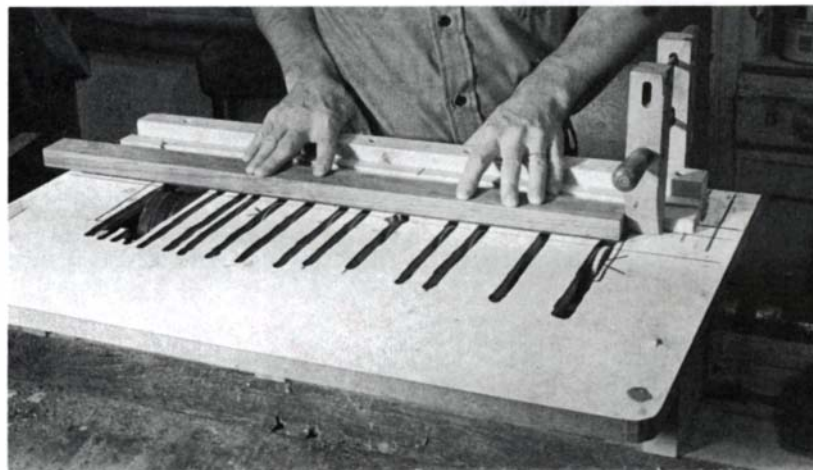
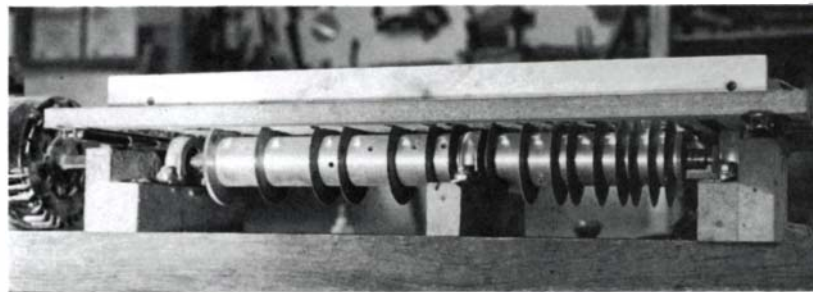
He chooses not to use lining around the inside. He finds it unnecessary for strength, and the absence of it frees the soundboard for easier, more responsive vibration. "Overbuilt instruments," he says, "can sound clunky."

Tuning pegs and their corresponding holes in the pegbox are tapered to a wedge fit, so the string will hold its tune. May rough-turns his rosewood pegs (or keys) and trues the tapers with a violinmakers' matched reamer and peg-cutter set, which assures smooth tuning. The set costs \$50, but it speeds the work and assures uniform tuning on every instrument.

May uses two coats of sealer and two of lacquer on each dul-



Warren May details the scroll of a dulcimer with a penknife, after a series of jigs and machines have produced the basic shape.



May's gang-saw, above, is a shaft running in pillow blocks, with blades ground to the width of the fret wire. The top is a sliding table made from plywood and drawer glides. Different-sized inserts can adjust the spacing of the blades. One pass will make all the cuts on May's standard fretboard, guaranteeing uniformity and accuracy. Below, May dry-clamps the framework, which is composed of the tailpiece, back, pegbox, and the fretboard-top subassembly. He wiggles-in the sides after the framework has been glued up. The plane merely steadies the pieces while May sets the clamps.



cimer. The second coat of lacquer can dry too glossy, out of place on a traditional instrument, but still a finish is necessary to protect the wood. May's solution is to polish the final coat with 0000 steel wool, using paste wax as a lubricant, which quickly produces a smooth, satin glow.

He uses yellow glue for most joints, and high-resin white glue for the sides, instead of the tricky (he says "undependable") hide glues that most instrument makers use. When it

was pointed out to him that this would make the instruments harder to take apart for repair, May countered: "What repairs? I don't anticipate any. I've never had a joint come open, and there's nothing inside to come loose. My instruments all have a lifetime guarantee." □

Bill Best runs the Upward Bound program at Berea College in Ky. Photos by Steven Bradford.

How a dulcimer makes music

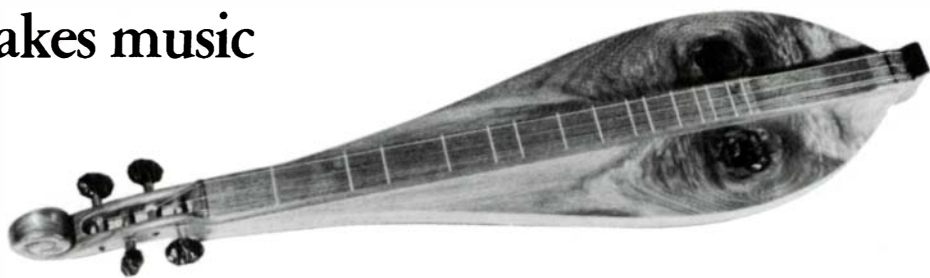
A stringed instrument without the refinements is just a box that you can't open. Here are some of the details May has noted after years developing his traditional dulcimer design.

May uses five woods. His favorite dulcimers are made with quartersawn spruce for the top, and cherry for the back and sides. He likes the combination of volume (from the cherry) and tone (the spruce). When he builds an instrument from one wood, he'll use sapwood or lighter textured wood for the top, heartwood for the back and sides. The lighter wood responds to the string vibration, and the heartwood reflects the sound and resists the dampening effect of the player's body. He says walnut is the customers' general favorite, because it has a smoother sound than cherry, which he likes for its brightness. Curly maple has a smaller sound than cherry, but it's clean and crisp. Mahogany and poplar are his other standards. If you mix woods at random, May cautions, you can end up with an unmusical, hard-to-tune instrument.

When May uses a hard wood like curly maple for the top, he reduces its thickness so it will respond more easily to the strings. His tops are usually $\frac{3}{32}$ in. thick, as are the backs and sides.

By channeling the fretboard, it is lightened (allowing the string vibration to pass through) without losing stiffness. The narrow gluing area also allows the top to vibrate freely. If you don't use a lining around the sides, you don't have to worry about binding and purfling (*FWW* #28) to restore the top's responsiveness at the outside edges.

String weight determines ease of playing and volume. May uses a bass string of wound 0.022-ga. steel, and three top strings of 0.012-ga. plain steel; guitar and banjo strings work



This teardrop-shaped dulcimer, based on the standard framework, takes advantage of an unusual piece of wood with naturally-formed soundholes. Photo: Frank Hudson.

fine. The strings are tuned G-G-G-C. The two bottom strings (farthest from the player's body) are drones, sometimes chorded. The melody is played on the top strings in unison. Notes are fretted with the fingers, or with a "noter," a stick used to press down the strings.

May plays his music in the traditional Appalachian style. He grew up in a log cabin with nine brothers and sisters, and has learned to play so well that the sound of his music pulls passersby into his Upstairs Gallery, in Berea. Although he's familiar with some of the other directions dulcimers can take (different bridge placements, soundposts, more frets) he feels that these distort the natural dulcimer sound and harmony.

He strums his instruments high up on the fretboard, close to his fretting hand. There's a reason for this style: since the string vibration travels to the soundboard at both ends (because of the construction of the instrument), the closer to the middle you strike the string, the purer the tone. When you use a pick, though, you play over the strum hollow, so you don't scratch the fretboard.

Pegbox design is trickier than it looks, because the strings must clear the wood as well as each other, otherwise tuning is an uncertain chore.

The length of each string determines its pitch. You can choose spacings for the tempered scale used on pianos and guitars, which averages out the correct spacings for different musical modes, or you can choose one mode in favor of the

others. May has settled on Ionian mode spacing as the best suited to his kind of dulcimer music. This spacing is shown at the bottom of this page.

String height depends on the depth of the notches in the nut and bridge. The important thing to keep in mind is that if strings are too high, they'll hurt your fingers, and if they're too low, they'll buzz on the frets. The nut should keep the unstopped strings as low as possible without allowing buzzing (file the notch too deep, though, and you need a new nut), and the bridge should be high enough to keep the strings about $\frac{3}{16}$ in. above the bottom fret. Frets can be adjusted and trued with a file so they're even.

The bridge floats on the fretboard; thus you can cant it down on one side (the bass strings are made longer) to keep the different weight strings in tune.

When you evaluate a dulcimer, remember that performers may look for volume and carrying power, but the average player wants a more intimate character. May recommends that you try out an instrument in a room like the one you'll play it in, or you won't hear its true sound.

—B.F.B.

For more fine-tuning and different points of view, read Foxfire 3 (New York: Doubleday, 1975); Hines, How to make and play the Dulcimore (Harrisburg, Pa.: Stackpole Books, 1973); and Harris, Notes on Dulcimer Making (Okla. City: Bois D'Arc, 1977).

Fret spacing for the Ionian mode — $\frac{1}{4}$ scale



Old Finishes

What put the shine on furniture's Golden Age

by Robert D. Mussey

Finishing is the least studied and most inaccessible aspect of our antique furniture heritage. The proportions and workmanship of a Philadelphia highboy are direct and observable manifestations of the skills of its maker. But what of its finish? Is the mellow patina, much admired today, anything like the finish that left the workshop 200 years ago?

We can't learn much from the pieces themselves. Most museum conservators agree that perhaps only one percent of our antique furniture bears indisputable remnants of its original finish. Scientific tests may inadvertently detect later refinishing or modern materials indistinguishable from the originals: there's no way to tell new beeswax from old.

When we turn to historical documents, much obscure, ambiguous or mysterious material conceals the pearls of hard information. The old craft guilds guarded their trade secrets as closely as the independent finishers who proudly, and loudly, announced the discovery of the "perfect" finishing potion. Formularies, cabinetmakers' and varnishers' account books, bills, histories and dictionaries of the period are difficult to interpret. Account books, for example, so rich in information about woods used and prices charged, say little about finishes. When materials are mentioned, the names vary from region to region: 25 different words may describe just one material. And more than 200 different resins, oils, fillers, waxes and pigments were used in 18th and early-19th-century furniture finishes.

It is equally difficult to say who did the finishing in 18th-century American workshops. I haven't found a single reference to finishers in any of the hundreds of account books I have examined. Finishing was not a specialized trade in the U.S. as it was in Britain, though there were one or two well-known specialists in large cities, like Thomas Johnson in Boston, who did Japanning, graining, marbling and gilding. Fancy painting, as on the Baltimore chair, was done by fine-art painters. It seems probable that cabinetmakers, particularly in small shops, did their own finishing, aided by various guide books and formularies.

I have spent the past five years negotiating these obstacles, comparing and analyzing some 5,000 documents, reformulating many of the recipes for stains, dyes and finishes, and applying them using original methods to see how they work and to watch how they age. I have placed more emphasis in my research on books that were frequently reprinted. An often-reprinted book was probably a popular one with working craftsmen. The first furniture-finishing guidebook known to have been printed in America, *The Cabinetmaker's Guide*, (Greenfield, Mass., 1825), was reprinted numerous times, and parts were pirated for other books throughout the 19th century. The *Guide* was pocket-sized, easy to use. I have two copies, from 1827 and 1837, both are dog-eared, paint-splattered and muddied—signs of a well-used book.

I have formed some broad conclusions from my research;

several of these have surprised me. I started out wanting to prove that shellac and French polishing were widely used during the 18th century. Instead, I discovered that French polish was not invented until about 1810, and that oil and wax were the predominant finishes of the period, favored even on many high-style pieces. And I found that the finish that left the shop was not mellow and glowing, but probably brilliantly colored, bright and shiny.

Stains, dyes, oils and waxes will be discussed here, limited to the period 1700 to 1830. Before that time, references are too scattered to be of use, and after 1830, mass production, chemical advances and burgeoning world trade profoundly changed furniture finishing. I'll discuss the varnishes of the 18th and 19th centuries in a subsequent article.

Surface preparation—The quality of the piece determined how much surface preparation it received. No elaborate smoothing practices were used on common pieces, and many table tops clearly display the corrugations left by hand planes. Finer furniture required more careful preparation. Andre Jacques Roubo's three-volume treatise, *The Art of the Woodworker* (Paris: 1769-74) suggests this elaborate sequence for veneered and marquetry pieces: smoothing planes followed by a variety of hooked cabinet scrapers, a hard rub with bundles of rushes (shave- or saw-grass), abrasion with solid pumice-stone blocks lubricated with water, further abrasion with sealskin, and finally, burnishing with slightly rounded blocks of hardwood.

The Cabinetmaker's Guide recommends glass-papering the surface after careful scraping. The author complains that glass-paper was being cheapened by adding sand, then gives his own instructions: pulverize broken window glass in an iron mortar, put it through sieves of appropriate fineness, and sift onto the glue-covered surface of heavy cartridge-paper.

Early in the 19th century, many recipes appeared using plaster of Paris, "hartshorn", and other natural clay-like materials to fill open grain before finishing. These could be dyed or stained and were mixed with a binder such as linseed oil or honey. Such fillers were previously used only on Japanned and gilded pieces where intensely pigmented varnish-paints were laid over a thick filler-ground. If clear finishes were applied over plaster-type fillers, the stain would eventually fade, and the filler would appear as unsightly white speckles.

In an earlier grain-filling method, the surface was covered with a thin coating of linseed oil and then abraded with a flat block of solid pumice stone. With enough pressure the resulting paste of oil and fine wood dust would at least partially fill the grain. After dyeing, the excess was wiped or scraped off.

Coloring—Craftsmen of the 18th century experimented with a vast range of materials for coloring wood and wood finishes. Documents of the period complain that colors "flee with the

light,” and the search for permanent natural pigments and dyes, not only for wood but also for fabrics and paints, spawned an entire industry and vast “scientific” research. The American colonies were a major source of colorants, such as logwood, indigo, oak bark and walnut bark, all of which were exported in quantities of hundreds of tons.

Craftsmen then used the terms “stain” and “dye” as imprecisely as craftsmen today. We define “stain” as a thin layer of colored pigment lightly penetrating the surface of the wood. “Dye” is any substance producing color changes by chemical reaction with the wood fiber or by diffusion of the colored dye-stuff deep into the cellular structure of the wood. Most 18th-century stains and dyes would have colored the wood in several ways at once. Stains with strongly acidic vehicles, like uric acid, or stains containing material like iron filings, would have colored by chemical reaction as well as by pigments contained in the stain. Likewise, many dyes contained pigments, which lodged in the wood fibers.

The Cabinetmaker's Guide distinguishes stain from dye by degrees of penetration: “Staining differs from the process of dyeing, inasmuch as it merely penetrates just below the surface of the wood, instead of coloring its substance throughout, as it does in dyeing; and the one is used for beautifying the face after the work is finished, while the other is employed on the wood before it is manufactured, in the state of veneers, to be cut into strings or bands. . . for inlaying borders. . . and which has of late years got much out of use, principally owing to the fault so much complained of, of the colors flying. . . .”

Nearly all the stains and dyes of the period were extremely fugitive by modern standards. Some would not have lasted more than a few years. Often a museum piece displays only the faded glory of the finisher's art. Red and yellow colorants, frequently used, faded quickly. Brown stains, mixed with reds, greens and blacks, soon faded to the faint green tint we see today on some antiques. I have found bright red areas preserved beneath the brasses of mahogany pieces, a far cry from the brown, red-brown or yellow-brown stains used for period reproductions. Some of my reformulations of original mahogany stain recipes come close to this brisk hue.

There is strong documentary evidence that staining of furniture before finishing was much less common in the 18th century than we assume. Thomas Sheraton, in his 1803 *Cabinet Dictionary*, wrote, “The art of staining wood was more in use at the time when inlaying was in fashion; . . . at present red and black stains are those in general use.” It is also possible that staining was more common in America than in England, but the documents I've examined from throughout the colonies infrequently mention staining and staining materials. Rural cabinetmakers may have used stains more often than their city cousins. Rural clients couldn't afford the finely figured woods or expensive mahogany favored in high-style Boston or Philadelphia work. So exotic woods were imitated by graining, mahoganizing and staining, or they emphasized the wild grain of a favorite wood, like tiger maple.

Nearly all colorant formulas were based on water or alcohol. These have great clarity and penetration, and deeply accentuate the structure and figure of wood. The rather muddy oil-based-pigment stains common in today's hardware stores were unknown in the 18th-century finishing shop. Likewise, only a very few period stains resemble the modern class of chemical stains, in which colorants or acids in the wood react with chemical counterparts in the staining solution.

More than one hundred different materials were used in the 18th century in the making of stains and dyes. These range from the exotic to the mundane—like old files or walnut husks in solutions containing vinegar, urine or wine. The *Cabinetmaker's Guide* calls for chipped logwood, a source of a valuable red-black dye, verdigris (copper acetate), copperas (iron sulphate), and barberry root among other ingredients for dyes. Stains might require archil, a Canary Island lichen, or dragon's blood, a resin from the fruit of the East Asian rattan palm. A red stain was made from brazilwood extract soaked in quicklime slaked in urine and painted hot onto the wood. If the customer only knew!

Attempting to give more brilliant lightfast colors, many of the recipes used such strong vehicles as sulphuric, muriatic or uric acids. Unfortunately these acids contributed to the decomposition of varnishes applied over the stains. The resins and oils used in the 18th-century varnishes were very sensitive to acids and alkalies, and may be rapidly degraded in reaction with these. This helps account for the survival of so few original varnish finishes.

Besides staining and dyeing the wood directly, finishers also colored the spirit varnishes they applied to the wood. Used to match the colors of diverse woods or to improve drab wood, they were called “changeing varnish,” and were colored with various unusual substances as well as with wood chips and bark of oak, chestnut, walnut or sumac. Similar mixtures applied to tinware, brassware or furniture brasses were called “lackers.” Shellac was the dominant resin in these “lackers,” its reddish or golden color heightening the golden effect desired from brass. Shellac is a spirit-soluble resin that polymerizes significantly, the process speeded by heat. Shellac-based “lackers” were often baked onto metals, giving a very hard, lustrous surface, resistant to oxidation, discoloration, and the formation of copper acetates. Original furniture brasses were probably bright and “brassy,” not at all tarnished like those favored on today's reproductions.

Finishes—Once the wood surfaces were leveled, smoothed, filled and stained, one of several types of coatings was applied. These fall within four broad categories: oil finishes, wax finishes, varnishes, and combinations of these.

Eighteenth-century writers on finishes list a whole array of criteria for the ideal finish: preservation of the wood from decay and insects, preservation of the color of the wood, and exclusion of atmospheric moisture. It should also be hard, shining, transparent and flexible, should not yellow or crack with age or turn white with spills, and it should hold up to hard use. The same qualities are sought by coatings manufacturers today, and no finish, then or now, fills the whole bill. Finishers experimented with an amazing range of materials in the 18th century, and some of their solutions were excellent. Indeed, some are still used today.

Since ancient times, craftsmen have known that various animal, vegetable and seed oils help to preserve wood. A wide selection of these was offered for sale by American merchants and manufacturers in the 18th century. Linseed (flaxseed) oil, the vehicle for most housepaints, was by far the most frequently used furniture-finishing material. Poppyseed and walnut oils were preferred for their light color and transparency, but they were expensive. Since the men who finished furniture were also gilding picture frames, Japanning tea waiters and painting houses and carriages, it is not surpris-

ing that, where possible, they used the same materials throughout their work.

Linseed oil finishes were widely used—despite their disadvantages: they were not durable, waterproof or alcoholproof, and they darkened with age, though they were repaired easily with fresh oil and some rubbing. Free from tariffs imposed by the English, both boiled and raw linseed oil were cheap and widely available. In lists of hundreds of furniture types, several influential English and American trade price-books quote prices only for oil finishing and polishing.

Pressed cold, linseed oil has a very light color; pressed hot, it is more plentiful, but considerably darker. To bleach out

this color, fresh-drawn linseed oil was placed in shallow pans or bottles in the sunlight. Alternatively, the solid impurities were precipitated by adding fuller's earth (a naturally occurring aluminum silicate) which absorbed the brownish coloring matter. Egg-white was sometimes added as a purifier.

Linseed oil dries very slowly on its own. Coatings of raw oil may remain tacky for years. Over centuries, many methods had been tried to make it more siccative, or fast drying. In the late Middle Ages, the oil was merely boiled. Later, burnt horn and bone, garlic, powdered lead-crystal glass, or alum were added to the boiling oil to try to enhance its drying properties. Most recipes of the 18th century employed lead com-

French polishing with wax

Andre Jacques Roubo's *The Art of the Woodworker* was published in Paris between 1769 and 1774. Although it's out of print this excellent book is available in French at major libraries. Roubo, a master craftsman, set down detailed accounts of carpentry, carriagemaking and furnituremaking, illustrated with hundreds of engravings. This plate shows the methods, materials and tools used in finishing the finest veneered furniture, called *ébénisterie*.

Figures 1 and 2: Preparing the surface. A finely set toothed plane worked diagonally across the grain as indicated by the lines would not disturb the veneer fibers or joints. Planing as in *figure 2* is cautioned against because it will probably break the joint.

Figures 3, 4 and 5: Scrapers, shown here, followed the planes, worked in the same fashion or as indicated in *figures 14 and 15*.

Figure 6: Sharkskin, or "dogfish" skin, was used as an abrasive. For fine veneered work, the fins or "ears of dogfish skin" were recommended, also worked across the grain.

Figure 7: After planing and scraping, abrading with sharkskin or *prêle* (horsetail, a species of rush with corrugated stems) polished away the remaining fine scratches on the veneer.

Figures 8 and 9: The polisher, a bundle of ordinary rush, was bound tightly, dipped in hot wax which rose into the stems, allowed to cool and rubbed over the veneer.

Figures 10, 11 and 12: Polishing sticks, small strips of walnut or other finely grained wood, were shaped to various sizes and used to push wax into areas too small for the polisher or on moldings with delicate araises.

Figure 13: A finisher forces wax into the grain of a veneered panel with the rush polisher.

—R.D.M.

MANIERE DE POLIR L'ÉBÉNISTERIE, ET LES OUTILS qui y sont propres

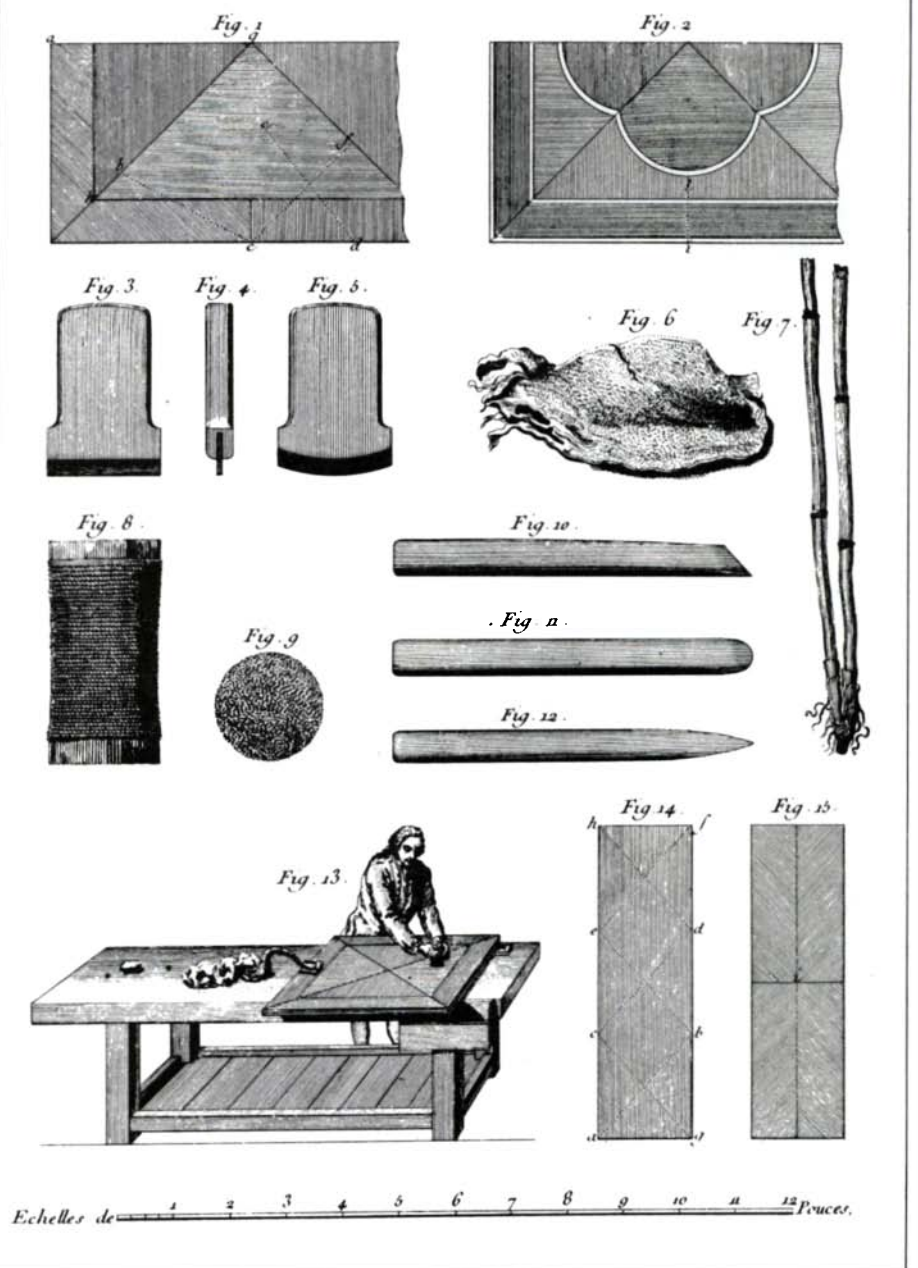


Photo: courtesy of Walter Rich

pounds as siccatives: litharge, massicot or minium, all lead oxides long used as artists' pigments. Once boiled, filtered, cooled and bleached, the oil was ready for use. The boiling and purification of linseed oil provided considerable income for many painters and varnishers in New England, but the occupation carried with it the danger of fire. Fire and lead poisoning were the bane of the finisher.

Oil finishing was as simple then as it is today. The oil was applied with a rag or brush, full strength or thinned with turpentine, and allowed to soak into the wood. The excess was wiped off with a coarse rag. After a day's drying time, another coat was applied, and ideally this was repeated until the wood would accept no more oil. In practice, a few superficial coats were probably all that were used. Total oil-finishing time for a desk may have amounted to only two to four hours. Prices for oil polishing formed a small proportion of the total costs recorded for making a piece.

Basic oiling practices varied. Sheraton, in his *Cabinet Dictionary*, outlines a method using brick dust and linseed oil, plain or stained red with alkanet root. Brick dust and oil formed a slightly abrasive paste which was rubbed on the surface until the wood warmed, then cleared off with wheat bran, leaving a bright surface. For off-color mahogany, or better grade mahogany that "wants briskness of color," Sheraton recommends a reddish polishing oil including alkanet root, dragon's blood, and rose pink, a pigment made with brazilwood dye.

I was surprised to find that wax finishes were also among those commonly used by 18th-century cabinetmakers. Wax, like oil, was cheap, available and easy to use. It was frequently listed in account books and mentioned in the literature of the period.

Other natural waxes were known, but beeswax had been favored for centuries as a finish on wood, a medium for paint, a waterproof stopping for boats, an embalming resin, and a flattening agent and final moisture barrier for varnishes. It is probably the natural organic finish most resistant to destructive oxidation. A modern analysis of beeswax used on a Punic warship showed that the wax remained chemically unchanged after 2,000 years. This extreme longevity was noted repeatedly by 18th-century writers on finishes. Beeswax was produced in large quantities in New England, where bee culture was a highly developed art. Samuel Grant, a prominent Boston upholsterer and merchant, bought up to 450 lb. at a time for use in his own shop, for sale to other cabinetmakers and for export to England.

The purification of wax by extraction of the honey impurities with water was cheap and simple, and two forms of purified wax, yellow and white, were known. The yellow still contained some impurities and was less expensive. The white, or clear beeswax, carefully filtered and bleached in the sun, was preferred for the finest work.

Thomas Sheraton describes two methods of wax polishing he says are typical. "Sometimes they polish with bees wax and a cork for inside work. . . . The cork is rubbed hard on the wax to spread it over the wood, and then they take fine brick-dust and sift it through a stocking on the wood, and with a cloth the dust is rubbed till it clears away all the clammings. . . . At other times they polish with soft wax, which is a mixture of turpentine and beeswax, which renders it soft, . . . a cloth of itself, will be sufficient to rub it off with."

For chair polish, Sheraton mixed wax with a small quantity

of turpentine, heated this in a varnish pan (a double boiler), added Oxford ochre for color and a little copal varnish. The cooled mixture was worked into a ball and applied with a stiff brush, forced into the grain, and then rubbed off.

Wax finishes were widely used on high-style 18th-century French furniture. The only complete description of this process that I have found is in Roubo's *The Art of the Cabinet-maker*. For veneered cabinetwork, finest quality wax was melted into a polisher, which was a bundle of rags bound tightly with wire, and with which the whole surface was rubbed. The heat generated melted the wax, and the rubbing forced it into the pores. Roubo cautions against using cork polishers, which can get too warm and loosen the veneer.

When the wax was evenly spread, the excess was scraped off. Roubo's wax scraper was similar to a cabinet scraper, but with a slightly rounded edge instead of a burr. Cleaned and polished with a rag, the work was "extremely even, and glossy as a mirror." For porous or reddish woods like rosewood or amaranth, powdered shellac was spread over the wax and rubbed in vigorously with the polisher to fill the open grain and heighten the color. Colophony (rosin) was used to stop up open grain in black woods like ebony.

A high-gloss finish was typical of nearly all high-style furniture finishes of the 18th century. Experimenting with Roubo's wax finish, I found that it gives a much higher gloss than we associate with wax finishes today. Roubo built up a wax finish in the same way as a varnish finish, and the wax became a fairly thick coherent body on top of the wood. And he used only 100% pure beeswax, which has better refracting qualities than today's wax emulsions.

Roubo prescribes a different process for common furniture: the wax was mixed with one-third tallow and rubbed off with a serge cloth. "In order to spread the wax better and drive it deeper into the open pores, one uses sometimes a sheet-metal pan in which glowing coals have been put, and this is held as close as possible to the work in order to warm the wax. In place of the pan one can also use a glowing red-hot piece of iron, which is even better, because it makes the wax liquid which flows into the open pores more easily."

Though it was possible to get a high gloss finish with wax, most finishers probably found the required method too time-consuming. Wax also has many of the same disadvantages as oil finishes. An 18th-century writer summarized the advantages and disadvantages of the common wax finish, noting: "Waxing stands shock; but it does not possess, in the same degree as varnish, the property of giving lustre. . . and of heightening their tints. The lustre it communicates is dull, but this inconvenience is compensated by the facility with which any accident that may have altered its polish can be repaired, by rubbing it with a piece of fine cork."

Easy to obtain, fast and easy to use and repair, oil and wax finishes were ideally suited for 18th-century finishing needs. Though pure beeswax finishes are rarely used today, the many virtues of oil finishes, particularly their low sheen, are once again appreciated and have made them a finish of choice, as they were 250 years ago. □

Robert Mussey, of Milton, Mass., trained as a cabinetmaker and wood finisher then served an internship in furniture conservation at the Henry Ford Museum. He is head of the furniture conservation workshop at the Society for Preservation of New England Antiquities in Boston, Mass.

Stains and dyes from *The Cabinetmaker's Guide*

I reformulate original stain and dye recipes to determine what the original colors were like. But I use alcohol soluble anilines for restoration or conservation work because they dry quickly, don't penetrate as deeply or rapidly as water soluble anilines, and because they are reasonably lightfast—I want my conservation to last more than ten years.

One of the first principles of conservation is to make any repair reversible, so it can be redone if a better technique is discovered. Original colors are dramatic, and not yet completely accepted for conservation, so when I color a piece I put down a barrier coat first, then color the finish that goes over it. The stain has not soaked into the wood so the coloring is reversible. On new work, the choice of color is my own; furniture makers have much more freedom than conservators. I think original colors will become acceptable for furniture conservation, used where appropriate to show people what the maker saw when he had completed the piece.

These recipes are from *The Cabinetmaker's Guide*:

Red dye. Take 2 pounds of genuine brazildust, add four gallons of water, put in as many veneers as the liquid will cover, boil them for 3 hours; then add 2 ounces of alum, and 2 ounces of aquafortis, and keep it lukewarm until it has struck through.

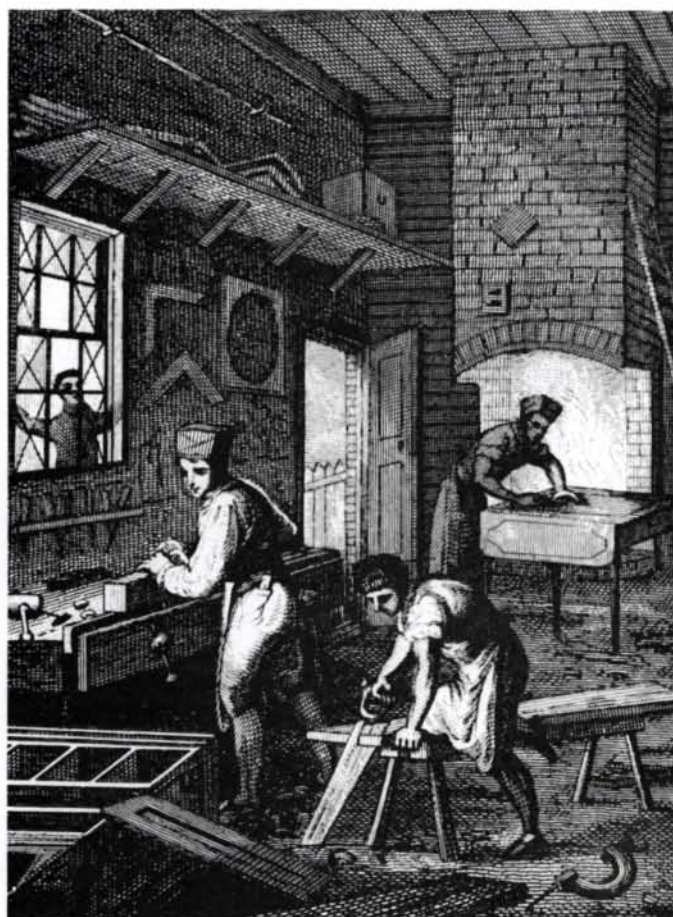
Brazildust; dust of brazilwood, *Caesalpinia echinata*, gives a very bright red dye. It was such an important item of commerce that the country was named after the tree. Aquafortis is nitric acid, reagent grade concentration.

Fine blue. Take a pound of oil of vitriol in a clean glass phial into which put four oz. of indigo, and proceed as before directed in dyeing.

This dye, and others for similarly unusual colors, would have been used for marquetry or by musical-instrument makers. Oil of vitriol is sulphuric acid.

To stain beech a mahogany color take 2 ounces of dragon's blood, break it into pieces and put it into a quart of rectified spirits of wine; let the bottle stand in a warm place, shake it frequently, and when dissolved it is fit for use.

Dragon's blood has been used for centuries, it is a dark, red resinous exudation from the fruit of the rattan palm, *Calamus drago*. Spirits of wine is alcohol distilled from wine; rectified means purified. Ethyl alcohol or shellac thinner from a paint store is the same thing. My reformulation of this stain came out a very bright red. Dragon's blood, when compared to other reds, is fairly lightfast. If you stain the wood directly, it is fugitive; but if you dye shellac with it, it is much less so, because the shellac locks the color in.



The Cabinetmaker's Guide, possibly the first finishing guidebook printed in America, was a workshop standby throughout the 19th century. It hasn't been reprinted recently but may be available in major libraries. Note the worker polishing a tabletop by the fire, which is a good way to keep the wax flowing freely.

Another method for black stain. Take one pound of logwood, boil it in two quarts of water, add a double handful of walnut peeling. Boil it up again, take out chips, add a pint of the best vinegar and it will be fit for use; apply it boiling hot. Note—This will be much improved if, after it is dry, we take a solution of green copperas dissolved in water, in the proportion of an ounce to a quart, and apply it hot to the above.

Logwood was an important dyestuff from *Haematoxylum campechianum*, a tree found in Central America and the West Indies. It gives a range of colors from red to purple to black and was used as dust, shavings or chips.

I have obtained materials for these and other recipes from the following firms: H. Behlen and Bros., Rt. 30 N., Amsterdam, N.Y. 12010; Laurence McFadden Co., 7430 State Rd., Philadelphia, Pa. 19136; A.F. Suter and Co. Ltd., Swan Wharf, 60 Dace Road, Bow, London E3, England; James B. Day Co., Day Lane, Carpentersville, Ill. 60110.

For further information: *The Artist's Handbook of Materials and Techniques*, Ralph Mayer, Viking, New York, rev. ed., 1982. *Painting Materials, A short encyclopedia*, Rutherford Gettens and George Stout, Dover, 1966. —R.D.M.

The Scribed Joint

Masking wood movement in molded frames

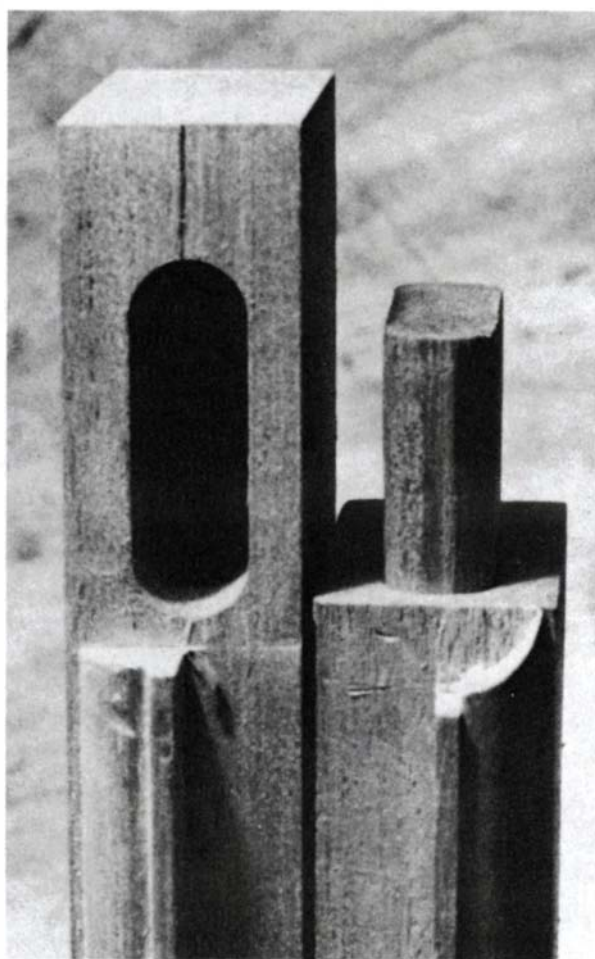
by Morris J. Sheppard

When moldings meet at an inside corner, as in framing a paneled door, they can be mitered by cutting each piece to a 45° angle. The joint is quick and it looks fine... until wood movement inevitably opens up the miter. Scribing the joint is an alternative to the miter. In this method, you cut the rail molding to the exact reverse section of the molding it will overlap on the stile. This allows the wood to move without breaking the joint. Where a center rail meets a stile the scribed moldings will slide and remain tight even with seasonal movement. In this article, I've used an ovolo molding or "sticking" on the frame parts, as shown in figure 1. However, any molding except those with undercuts can be scribed. Undercut molding must be mitered. A version of the scribe called the cope-and-stick joint can be done on the shaper or tenoner, but you can get excellent results by scribing with hand tools.

You'll need a small backsaw, chisels, a gouge and a miter template. A commercially-made template is brass, about 5 in. long and cut to a 45° angle at each end. You can make your own out of wood, but make sure it is dead accurate. Ovolo sticking is scribed with an in-cannel gouge whose radius matches that of the molding. You'll need a gouge to match each size of molding you want to scribe. Put a keen edge on the in-cannel by working the inside bevel with a slip stone and then remove the burr by holding the outside of the tool flat against a benchstone. Don't double-bevel the edge as you would a carving gouge. If you do, it won't cut straight.

Prepare your framework as you usually do. In my shop, we mortise the rails and the stiles on the slot mortiser, then insert a loose tenon. You can use a dowel joint or a conventional mortise and tenon, but when cutting the rails remember that their shoulders fit to the bottom of the panel rabbet and not to the inside edge of the molding. Mill the molding and the rabbet along the full length of the rails and stiles.

Begin the scribe by cutting away the molding on the stiles where the rails meet them—at the stile ends and the center of the rail if a middle stile is used. The molding should be cut



The scribe joint's overlapping moldings hide wood movement.

back even with the depth of the rabbet and ought to align with the listel on the rail. To get an accurate mark, hold the rail against the stile and strike a knife line, as in figure 2. Then saw down with the backsaw, being careful not to go deeper than the rabbet's depth. Remove the waste by paring with a chisel or by bandsawing.

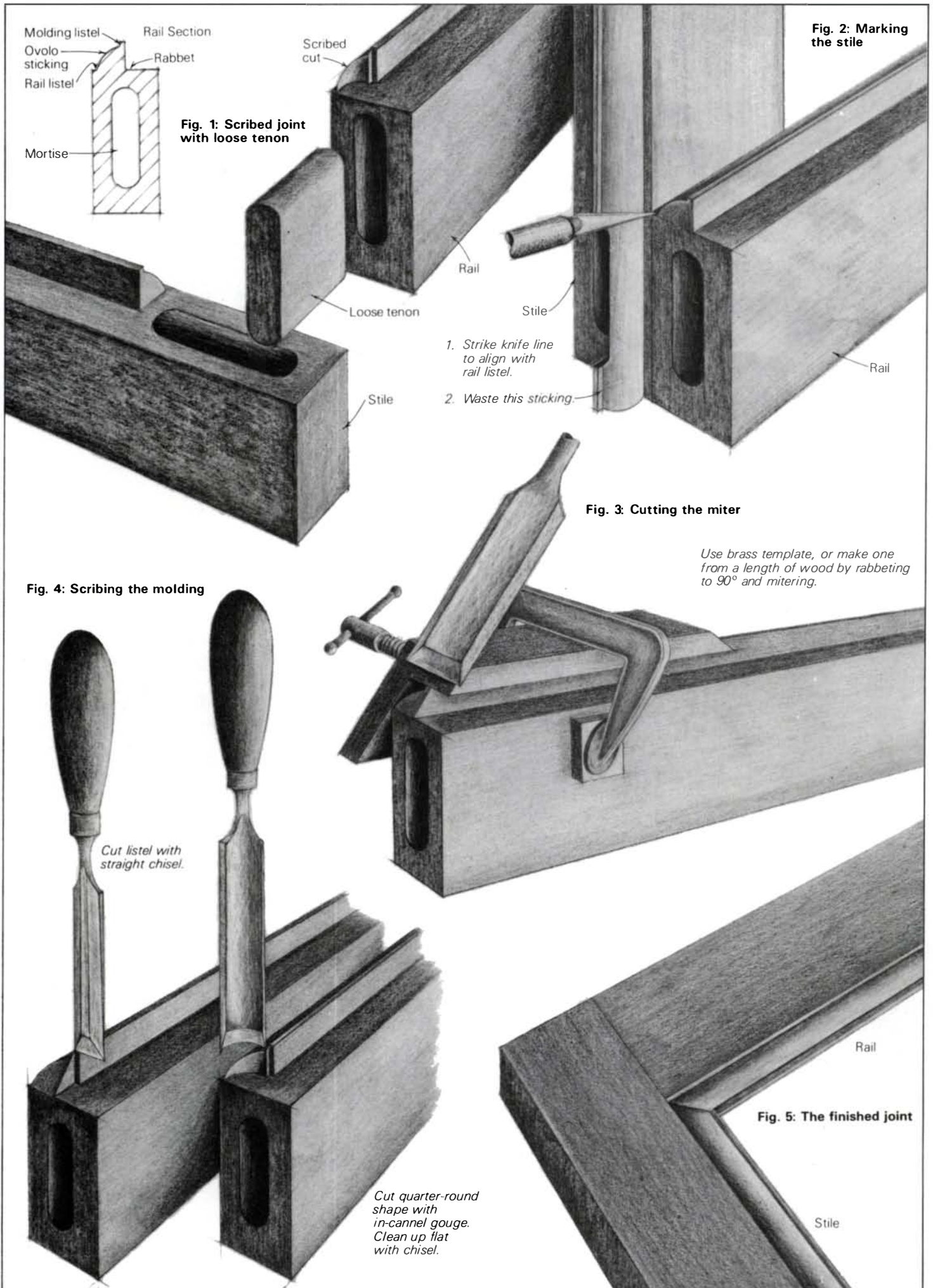
Now move to the rails. Place the miter template over the molding at the end of the rail as in figure 3. Align it so the miter cut will end exactly at the tenon shoulder; use the rail listel as a guide. Fix the template with a clamp and then use a sharp chisel to pare away the waste. On the final cut, rest the back of the chisel firmly on the miter template. With the miter cut, the contoured edge of the molding outlines the scribe cuts, which are then made perpendicular to the edge of the rail. Cut straight down with a straight chisel at the listel, and with the in-cannel gouge make the concave shape that will mate over the stile molding (figure 4). Several

cuts may be needed but the trick is to make the last cut precisely at the mark outlined by the miter. It helps to stand directly above the work with light from the side, casting a shadow at the outlined edge. If the gouge is keen, it will be easy to place it right on the line, and a firm push will be all that's needed. Be careful with the thinnest corner of the scribed molding, as it is prone to damage. Hold the gouge square to the work or a gap will show in the finished joint. Use a small chisel to clean up the bottom of the cut.

The scribe joint will also work in frames with a groove for the panel instead of a rabbet. Then the molding on the ends of the stiles gets cut away to the bottom of the groove and one tenon shoulder is offset to accommodate the rear wall of the groove (*FWW* #18, p. 88).

Cut accurately, the scribed pieces should slide together perfectly, as in figure 5. And they should stay that way through many seasons of wood movement. □

Morris J. Sheppard designs and makes furniture and cabinets in Los Angeles, Calif. Photo by the author.





Scribed mortise-and-tenon joinery in this 29-ft. trussed log bridge make all its parts securely interdependent.

Trussed Log Bridge

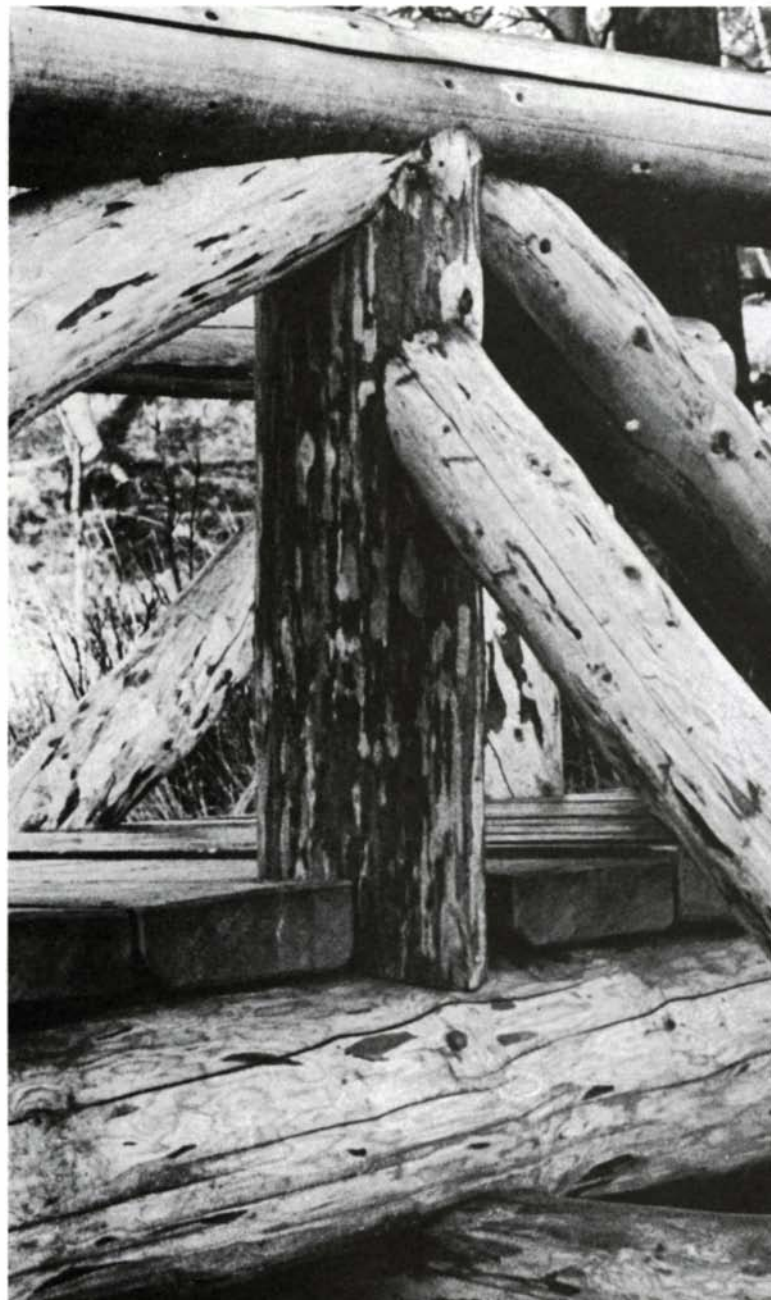
Scribed joints for structural strength

by Monroe Robinson

I hadn't thought of log work as being within the realm of fine woodworking until I saw the work of a master, Lee Cole, several years ago. After watching Cole work on a few jobs, I was ready to start a log project that had been offered to me eight years earlier: a 29-ft. trussed log bridge spanning a creek on a wilderness homestead at Lake Clark, some 140 air miles southeast of Anchorage, Alaska. The bridge was needed to connect the buildings that the owner had built on both sides of the creek. It needed to be strong and wide enough to support the front-end loader used on the homestead and to aesthetically complement the log buildings and the wilderness environment. It also required a rock foundation because the creek floods annually.

The project was started in the spring of 1978 when the creek flowed at its lowest. Two of us chipped through gravel and poured a concrete footing in water 18 in. below the water level in the creek. Before the spring breakup we built stone walls up above the high-water level of the creek. After we got the main logs, we finished up the walls about 8 ft. high and constructed a shelf on the top of each wall for the bridge to sit on. These had to be slightly different heights above the water line to accommodate the taper of the logs. All the rock, gravel and sand that we used we collected from the lake shore. Only the cement and reinforcing steel were flown to the site.

We obtained a permit to cut white spruce from federally managed land on Lake Clark, then selected, felled and peeled about two dozen logs. We skidded them into the lake, lashed together a raft with chain and towed it three miles across the



lake to the homestead. Some of the 10-in. to 16-in. diameter logs we sawed into 4-in. thick decking boards using an Alaska chain-saw mill (see "Chain-Saw Lumbering," *FWW* #8, Fall '77). We squared up the sides but left the natural taper of the log to get maximum decking.

The three main logs (one chord for each side of the bridge and one in the center) were moved into place on rollers and oriented bow-side down to increase the bow during drying, since the objective was to have a bridge that would be level or just slightly higher at the center. The decking was temporarily laid upon these logs, and the remainder of the logs put on a rack. All the wood was allowed to dry for a year.

The following summer we removed the decking and turned the main logs over to have them bow-side up. We sawed a flat along the tops, making each log bow exactly $\frac{3}{4}$ in. Next we re-rounded the logs with a drawknife, leaving only a 2-in. wide flat along the top of each log for attaching the decking. A small flat leaves less area where water can collect.

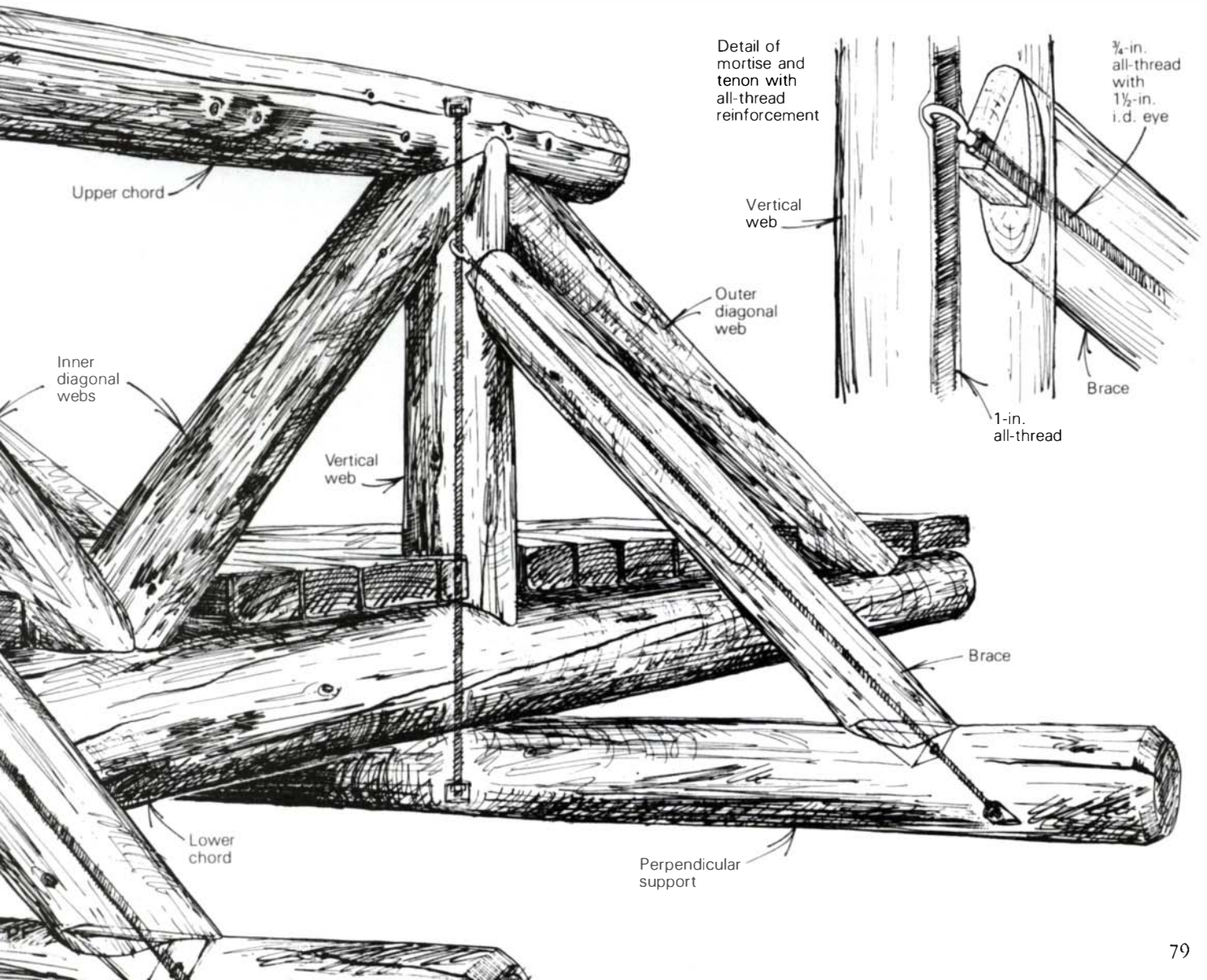
The log joints in the bridge differ from the joints in a log house. In a house one log is set above its eventual resting place, scribed to match the contours of the log beneath it, rolled over, notched out to the scribed line and then rolled back into place. If the joint doesn't close up tightly, a log can always be notched a little more without affecting those already in place. When the fit is tight enough the builder goes on to the next log.

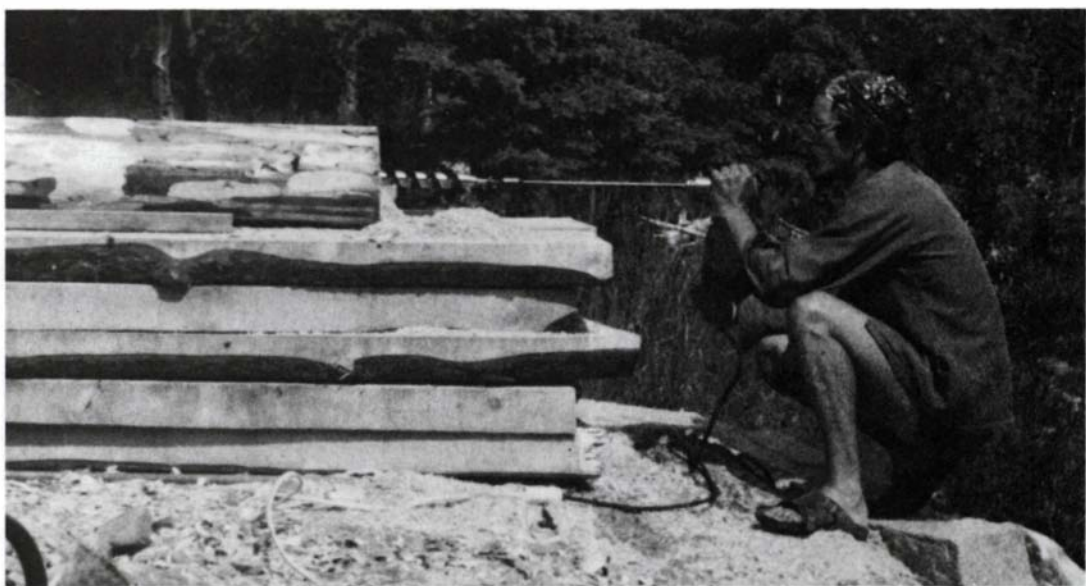
With a bridge, all the logs on each side are dependent on

one another. None can be shortened, rotated or angled differently to help make one joint fit without affecting the fit of the other joints. As the drawing shows, the bridge has mortise-and-tenon joints at both ends of the brace logs and at the lower ends of the outer diagonal web logs. All-thread bolts run through the length of the brace and vertical web logs, and the joints between all the logs are scribed. These make construction rather more complicated than stacking the walls of a house. No part of the structure is really in place until all the parts fit.

Before any joints are cut, the centerline of each log must be determined. This establishes the path of the bore in those logs to be connected by all-thread and helps in laying out the joints and positioning the logs in relation to one another. Since the true centerline is concealed within the log, I projected it onto the outer surface. First measure across the end of the log from any four directions, marking a line at the center of each measure. With these four lines, a point can be picked that most closely represents the center of that end. Now using a carpenter's level, mark a plumb and a horizontal line through the centerpoint extending to the edges. Do the same on the other end of the log. Then snap four chalk lines along the length of the log connecting the lines on the log ends. These chalk and end lines can now be aligned with a carpenter's level to position the log precisely as desired—vertically, horizontally, or at any angle or rotation.

Next the vertical web logs and the braces are bored along





Author uses a ship auger with extensions to bore for the all-thread that secures the vertical web and brace logs, photo right. A pair of Starrett No. 85 dividers with a custom-made, adjustable target-bubble level, below, scribes the contour of one log onto the end of an adjoining log. The level helps keep the points of the divider plumb while scribing. Below right, Robinson has oriented the vertical web log horizontally to scribe its contour to the end of a brace log.



their length to receive the all-thread. We used a ship auger with several extensions (photo, top) to drill 1½-in. holes for the 1-in. all-thread in the vertical webs, and 1¼-in. holes in the braces for ¾-in. all-thread. To assure that the hole ran the center of the log, I drilled half the length of the log from each end, meeting in the center. Ream out the juncture by drilling past it. It's best to drill these holes in the rough logs before cutting any joints, so that if a log has to be scrapped because a hole went astray, you won't have put wasted work into it.

Now the ends of each log must be scribed to match the contours of the adjoining logs, and in the case of the braces and lower ends of the outside diagonal web logs, tenons must be cut. To scribe the contour of one log onto another, I used a pair of Starrett No. 85 dividers with an adjustable target-bubble level, which I had custom made (photo, above). You

can get one from C. Norman Brown, S.R.A. Box 4008Q, Anchorage, Alaska 99507, or make one yourself with compasses and a bubble level. With the bubble adjusted so the tip of the steel point can be kept plumb to the tip of the pencil, an exact transfer of the contour of a horizontal log can be scribed to the end of an adjoining log, whether that log is plumb or diagonal. It requires positioning the log to be scribed within a few inches directly over the horizontal log.

We scribed the bottom ends of the vertical and diagonal logs first, positioning them exactly above the spot where they would sit on the lower chord or on the perpendicular log, and at the proper angle. Waste from the decking provided braces for the log while scribing. The contour of the horizontal log is scribed on the end of the adjoining log, and the waste is removed using chain saw, ax and gouges. In the case of the



Gouges are used to finish shaping the scribed shoulder of a brace log, above. The hole, which will receive the all-thread, was bored the entire length of the log before the tenon was cut. Below, a finished joint.



outer diagonal webs and braces, stock for tenons must be left. To lay out the tenon, we measured 1 in. on either side of the centerline for the cheeks, and 1½ in. on the other side of the centerpoint from the acute angle of the log's end for the edge of the tenon; the tenon has three shoulders. We used a hand-saw to saw down the cheeks, and removed the waste with gouges and chisels (photo, top).

The mortise for this tenon is located using the chalkline on the horizontal piece (measuring 1 in. on either side of it) and the scratch from the steel tip of the dividers when the pencil end scribed the contour onto the adjoining log. This scratch marks the farther end of the mortise; the other end can be judged by eye. The photo above shows the relationship between the mortise and tenon.

The joints connecting the top ends of all the diagonal logs

to the vertical web logs are oriented perpendicular to the joints at the bottom end of these logs. Therefore the scribing technique using the bubble-level dividers cannot be used here; the bubble level only tells you when the divider points are plumb. Instead, I used two different methods to scribe these joints. For the joints between the outer diagonal web logs and the vertical web log and also for the joint between the lower ends of the inner diagonal web logs, I positioned the logs to be matched close together and held the divider points in line with one another, horizontally rather than plumb, without using the level. I set the dividers to mark ½ in. short of the final scribe, then notched out the waste and moved the logs closer for a more accurate rescribing and final fit.

For the other upper joints (between both the brace and inner diagonal web log and the vertical web log) I laid the vertical web log horizontal and then, using a carpenter's level, positioned the upper end of each diagonal log plumb above it at the proper angle. Then it could be scribed using the bubble-level-divider technique described earlier. I could have used this technique for the joint between the outer diagonal web log and the vertical web log, but the former is 10 ft. long and unwieldy to set up.

Before assembly all the joints and drilled holes were given numerous coats of creosote and a solution of pentachlorophenol in fuel oil. The all-threads were coated with grease, and the mortises were filled with enough grease to prevent water from being trapped if it ran in along a crack. The decking and exposed surfaces of the logs were treated with a mixture of 47½% fuel oil, 47½% creosote and 5% pentachlorophenol. Reading later about the health hazards of pentachlorophenol makes me leery about using it again.

To assemble, first the perpendicular support logs were positioned under the lower chord logs using temporary staging built on the creek bed. Then the vertical web logs were positioned, and the holes already bored in their length were used to guide the bit down through the lower chord log and the perpendicular support log. The braces were positioned, and the holes bored in their length were used to guide the bit down through the perpendicular support log and up into the vertical web log to meet the hole in its length. The brace was removed and gouges were used to enlarge the hole in the vertical web log to accommodate a 1½-in. i.d. eye that was coupled to the ¾-in. all-thread running through the brace. The eye was positioned in the mortise and the 1-in. all-thread passed through it, from the top of the vertical web log through the lower chord and perpendicular support logs, where it received a washer and nut for later tightening. The lower end of the all-thread running through the brace also received a nut that was tightened later. Next the outer diagonals were placed, then the inner diagonals. Mortise-and-tenon joints are unnecessary at the bottom of these inner diagonals because they wedge one another in place against the vertical web logs. Mortise-and-tenon joints at the tops of both inner and outer diagonals aren't needed either, because the upper chord log positions the others. The upper chord log was bored for the 1-in. all-thread and all nuts were tightened.

Within a year after construction the bow in the bridge had settled into levelness. □

Monroe Robinson is a woodcarver in Chugiak, Alaska, who also does architectural commissions. Photos by the author, except where noted.

Woodlot Management

Thinning and pruning for more valuable trees

by Irwin and Diane Post

Growing trees is, in many ways, akin to raising vegetables in a backyard plot. Just as a rich harvest rewards the gardener's weeding and watering efforts, so too can labor in the woodlot produce dramatic, if slower, results. And woodlot management holds a special value for the woodworker—the pleasure of working wood he or she has helped to grow.

Forest management need not be complex nor does it have to be practiced on boundless tracts of land. The techniques we've outlined in this article can be used by anyone, on woodlots as small as an acre or less. Most management work consists of cutting and pruning trees following a thoughtful evaluation of the woodlot. From some woodlot work, you will have to wait for results, but other benefits come quickly. We've begun to manage only a small portion of our 50-acre woodlot in Vermont and we already have 3,000 board feet of hardwood plus 50 cords of firewood to show for our work.

Our management plans are aimed at meeting our future needs for lumber and firewood for ourselves and for sale, and at growing a healthy forest. You can shape your plan to suit your needs, and the climate, soil and type of trees that grow best in your area. You can design your own management plan, or seek help and advice from county, state or consulting foresters in your area.

Where is the woodlot? How big is it?—It's amazing how many people don't know their property boundaries. The first step in woodlot management is to find and mark the boundaries. The penalties for cutting someone else's trees are high in terms of good, neighborly relations, and even higher in possible legal costs and damages. Sometimes the boundaries are marked with stone walls, fences or blazes left by a neighbor or previous owner. Other times it will be necessary to hire a surveyor. In any event, be certain of the boundary before marking it—few things are more troublesome than a boundary mark that's in the wrong place.

It's also important to know the real size of your woodlot. The size determines the value of the land and the property tax on it, and it is the basis for estimating your wood harvest. Until the advent of electronic calculators, finding the area of an irregular parcel was tedious and fraught with error. As a result many parcels were guesstimated and recorded as, say, $25 \pm$ acres, with no limits on the plus or minus. We recently helped a neighbor resurvey a parcel that was recorded as $150 \pm$ acres; it turned out to be only 120 acres. If you are buying a woodlot, we suggest requiring the seller to have a survey map prepared as a condition of sale.

The traditional way to mark forest boundaries is with painted blazes on unmarketable trees on, or nearly on, the boundary line. A blaze is made by chopping several square inches of bark off the tree at about chest height, then paint-

ing the wound a bright color. If you wait a few weeks before painting the wound, the paint will stick better. The blazed trees should never be harvested and they should be close enough together for the boundary to be easily followed. Repaint the blazes every few years.

A blaze is a wound, and a potential doorway for disease. If you want to avoid this risk, you can nail colored plastic to the trunk at eye level. Use brass or copper nails to avoid damage to sawblades if the tree is ever harvested, and plan to replace the plastic every couple of years.

Evaluating the woodlot—Once the boundaries are established, you can begin learning the characteristics of your land and of its trees. A forester "cruises" the woodlot by recording observations on a map and making field notes while walking through the woods.

A site index is a shorthand method of indicating the quality of the land and its ability to grow trees. The site index is a number indicating the average height of a tree species at a given age, usually 50 years. Thus a site index of 80 for white pine means that a 50-year-old white pine tree can be expected to be 80 feet tall. The site index reflects soil quality, topography, water availability and drainage. It does not depend on the number, health or size of the trees currently growing. A woodlot with a site index of 80 for white pine will still have a site index of 80 even after it has been clearcut.

You can figure site index by determining the ages and heights of representative trees of each species on your woodlot. These figures are then matched with a published table to find the index numbers. You can get site-index tables, comparative indexes, and help in evaluating your data from a state, county, or consulting forester.

The age of your trees can be found with an increment borer, an auger-like tool that removes a small core of wood from the tree trunk. Counting the annual growth rings from the pith to the bark gives the age of the tree, although you should add several years to account for the time it took the tree to reach the height of the bore. If you don't have an increment borer, you will have to figure age by felling trees and counting the annual rings. Cutting only a few trees will give enough data for figuring the site index.

Tree height can be measured with a variety of instruments including relascopes, clinometers and optical altimeters. But the simplest and cheapest instrument is a log and tree scale stick. This tool, resembling a truncated yardstick, is available from forestry supply houses and has a scale for determining tree height based on a simple sighting method.

Other qualities of the stand that should be noted during the cruise include tree diameters, rate of diameter growth, basal area, tree quality and species composition.

Tree diameter is usually measured at $4\frac{1}{2}$ ft. above ground and is given as "DBH" or "diameter at breast height." Diam-

Irwin and Diane Post are forest engineers living in Barnard, Vt.



Short of felling trees and counting the annual rings, an increment borer, left, is the best way to tell the age of trees. The tool removes a small, fragile cylinder of wood, right. The rings aren't as easy to see as in a cut tree, and must be counted carefully.

eter growth rates can be gauged from the increment core: widely spaced annual rings indicate vigorous growth while close rings show slow growth. Slow-growing stands usually need thinning.

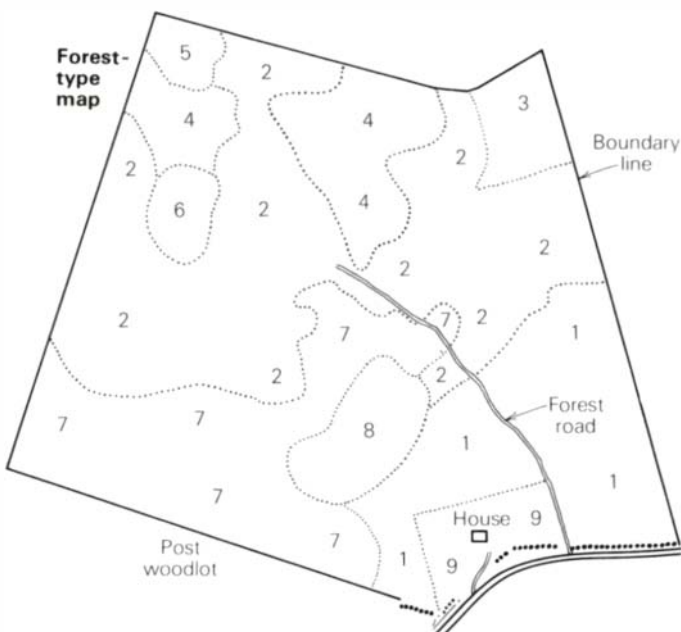
Basal area is a relative measure of how dense a stand is and it helps you decide if thinning is needed. To understand basal area, imagine one acre of your woodlot with all the trees cut at breast height. Measure the cross-sectional area in square feet of all the stumps and add them up to arrive at basal area in square feet per acre. The more crowded the stand, the higher the basal area. Management plans often specify thinning to a certain basal area, taking into account site index and management objectives. In New England, for example, we generally recommend that hardwood stands be thinned to 50 to 70 square feet per acre and softwood stands to 70 to 80 square feet. Foresters measure basal area by “point sampling”

with a prism or tools such as a Cruz-All or Cruise-Angle. The forester stands at a randomly selected point in each forest type and makes a 360° sweep while looking through the instrument's sight. Each instrument comes with instructions on which trees should be counted for determining basal area.

Tree quality, unlike the measurements described thus far, is almost entirely subjective. It includes such factors as straightness of the trunk, limbiness, evidence of rot, and size and health of the crown. Tree quality is a predictor of log quality, so we want to remove trees of low quality, thereby “releasing” nearby high-quality trees from competition.

Ground conditions should also be noted during the cruise because they will affect access to the timber at harvest. Steepness of slope, stoniness and location of bogs and watercourses should all be recorded on the woodlot map.

Woodlots, no matter how small, are seldom uniform. There are usually differences in species, tree size and site index from place to place. Homogeneous areas are known as forest types. The management plan treats each forest type separately, with specific recommendations for each type.



The completed forest management plan should include a detailed map of the woodlot. The numbers represent forest types. Area 2, for example, is a 19-acre tract with sugar maple, ash and beech as the predominant species. Each forest type on the map has a specific management objective and a list of recommendations to reach the objective.

The management plan—The management plan consists of a statement of the overall management objective, the forest-type map, the description of each forest type and the management recommendations for each forest type. Most woodlot owners want several benefits, so conflicting objectives have to be weighed. It's important to have a good picture of how different management strategies will change the appearance of the woodlot and it is useful to examine managed woodlots nearby and to talk with their owners. As you set your goals, remember that your needs may not align with those of the commercial lumber producer. Burls or spalted lumber, for example, are highly valued by some craftsmen but are virtually useless to a professional logger.

There are two general management strategies: even-age and uneven-age. In even-age management all the trees on a given parcel are the same age and they will mature and be cut at the same time. After the harvest, a new stand will be established through planting or natural regeneration. Uneven-age management is not so orderly. There are trees of every age from seedlings to sawlogs and the stand will be harvested and

thinned every 10 to 15 years. The best management for your woodlot depends on what trees you already have and their ages, the species you hope to regenerate, and aesthetics. For example, some species, such as the birches and oaks, require nearly full sunlight to the forest floor for good regeneration, while other species like sugar maple and beech regenerate well under the shade of standing trees.

Management recommendations also tell what products can be expected in the near term such as firewood, pulpwood or sawlogs and what equipment is necessary for harvest. The duration of a management plan is usually ten to twenty years, after which it should be updated.

The management plan prescribes the harvesting, thinning or pruning for each forest type in the woodlot. How do you decide which trees to cut and which to leave? Generally, the higher-value species that grow well on the site should be favored over short-lived species that don't reach sawlog size, species that don't do well on the site, diseased or poorly-formed trees and weed species. For example, on our woodlot, sugar maple, white ash, yellow birch and white birch do very well. Black cherry does less well but we favor the healthy cherries because we prize their wood for cabinetwork. Gray birch is a short-lived species that rarely attains sawlog size, so we cut it for firewood. We cut our beech trees also, because they have contracted scale disease. Striped maple is a weed species that can blanket the forest and prevent regeneration of the species we want. We cut all the striped maple we find.

A management plan can also benefit wildlife. We have a small deer yard on our land, an area of dense coniferous growth where deer find shelter in winter. From a wood production viewpoint this deer yard should be thinned, but we prefer to leave this stand uncut for the deer.

If you plan to do the management work yourself or if you have a large woodlot, it may not be possible to do all the work in one year. You should set work priorities, thinning first the areas with good site indexes and with forest types that will benefit most from attention. Schedule the work carefully. If you plan to sell your wood, your timetable should be flexible enough to suit market fluctuations. For instance, it has not been possible to sell pulpwood in our area for the past year, so we aren't cutting it now.

It's easy to underestimate how much work managing a woodlot is—particularly during the first treatment of previously unmanaged forest. It can be very discouraging to fall far short of your goals, and it's no fun when every spare moment must be spent in the woodlot. Most people would find a goal of treating about one acre a year of previously unmanaged woodlot about right. A first thinning in a typical New England forest would mean coping with between 5 and 15 cords of wood per acre.

Picking trees to cut—In an old field that grows up naturally into forest, many thousands of seedlings may sprout, but as they compete for sunlight, water and nutrients, most will die. By the time they reach 18-in. DBH, perhaps only 75 trees per acre will survive. Nature, however, does not always select the same trees that we would select. We want straight, clear, sound logs of the species we value. By judiciously lowering the competition among pole-size trees with good prospects of becoming quality sawlog trees, we can improve the quality of our future harvests.

The total amount of wood grown on an acre of land will be

the same whether we manage it or not. Thus, by reducing the competition among the best stems through careful cutting, we don't reduce total growth but concentrate it in the best stems. These trees increase in diameter faster and attain sawlog size sooner than if we let nature run its course. Vigorous, fast growing trees are also healthier than slow growing trees, and are less susceptible to disease and insect damage.

Given the object of producing high quality sawlogs, we can readily decide which trees to cut and which to leave for future growth. For illustrative purposes, think of an uneven-age hardwood stand with everything from seedlings to sawlog trees. Large trees that are obviously hollow or very poorly formed should be cut, unless you wish to leave a few as den trees for wildlife. These trees may not yield a single sawlog despite their large diameter. Sawlog trees that have a lot of dead branches in the crown should also be harvested. Such trees are overmature and growing very slowly. Certain other mature trees may have taken over more of the forest than they deserve, with too many branches and too large a crown. These "wolf trees" cut off sunlight from large areas of the forest floor, distressing and weakening surrounding trees. Healthy sawlog trees should be cut only if you need the wood or if they are overcrowded. The pole-size trees, 4-in. to 10-in. DBH, will dramatically respond to thinning by increasing their rate of diameter growth. Trees of good form of the desired species should be favored by releasing them from competition on at least two sides. Trees with a strong lean should be cut because they usually contain large amounts of reaction wood, a source of trouble for the woodworker. Pole-size trees cut during a thinning make good firewood and rarely need splitting. It is generally not worth thinning saplings and seedlings because tight young stands encourage these trees to grow straight and to self-prune their lower branches.

Picking which trees to thin and which to save is easier to do from an armchair than in the woodlot, but it can be learned with practice. We mark the trees we want to cut, but you can just as easily mark the crop trees you want to save. *Two cardinal rules of marking a stand are to look up and to look at all sides of a tree before deciding to favor it.* Many straight trunks are topped by dead or nearly dead crowns. A trunk that looks sound on one side may be hollow or cracked when viewed from another angle. Special marking paints can be used, but any bright-colored paint will work. We walk in parallel strips 50 feet wide looking for high quality trees of the species we want to keep. Diseased or low quality trees are marked for removal. We then look closely at the remaining trees (see the box on p. 86) and decide which should be cut to give space on at least two sides of a good tree's crown. We next examine trees of desired species but of only intermediate quality, and those of high quality but of less desirable species. We cut any of these trees whose removal will give space on two sides of the favored trees' crowns.

Ideally, our crop trees will be evenly spaced. However, we don't hesitate to leave two good trees closely spaced if there are poor trees around them that will be cut. In hardwood stands where there are no potential sawlogs, poor quality trees may be left standing. These trees provide future firewood and shade that favors regeneration of desired trees. Removal of all shade encourages brambles and short-lived pioneer species. We leave an occasional (one to four per acre) old but healthy tree with a good crown. These trees have little lumber value but offer food for wildlife, and nest sites in hollow branches.



Pruning is an often overlooked route to producing high quality logs. Post uses a standard 17-ft. saw to prune a white pine stem.

Pruning future sawlogs—Pruning is one of the most overlooked ways of improving sawlog quality and it's the route to the clear boards we so prize in our woodworking. Pruning is simply cutting off the lower branches of trees very close to the trunk with a polesaw. The tool is available from forestry supply houses for about \$25. Trees are usually pruned to a height of 17 ft., producing one "standard" 16-ft. sawlog with an ample allowance for stump waste. Pruning any higher with a polesaw is difficult and is generally not done.

To reduce the risk of infection, the cut should be made immediately outside the branch collar—where the trunk swells at the branch's base. Vigorously growing trees soon heal over the wound and grow clear wood. All of the dead branches and a few of the lower live branches can be pruned without hurting the tree. Don't leave stubs when you prune—the tree can't heal over them. As a stub rots, it provides entry for moisture, fungi and insects into the heart of the tree.

The branches of pole-size trees are small, and pruning wounds heal quickly. However, large diameter trees have thicker branches that heal over slowly, making it likely that they will be harvested before pruning does them much good.

Since there are many more pole-size trees to the acre than there are future sawlog trees, only the trees with the best potential should be pruned. Since there is little point in pruning firewood, it is sensible for pruning to follow thinning.

Harvesting and regeneration—Harvesting your own timber can be very satisfying. Through harvesting, you change the character and appearance of your woodlot, as well as obtain valuable wood. With patience and care, you can leave your woodlot in better condition than most loggers would.

On the other hand, it takes heavy and expensive equipment as well as a lot of time and skill to harvest sawlogs. And it is dangerous work. Many woodlot owners find that they are better off selling the stumpage rights to a logger. We strongly recommend that every such timber sale be supervised by a consulting forester. In most cases, the forester marks the trees that will be harvested (and those the logger should remove as culls), prepares a notice of the timber sale, shows the woodlot to loggers, takes bids and helps the landowner decide which bid to accept. The forester draws a contract, oversees the harvest and holds a damage deposit from the logger to pay for any damages. The forester has the authority to shut down the logging operation in adverse weather, when heavy equipment might damage the forest floor, or if excessive damage is done by the logger. The forester's fee is more than made up by the advantages of competitive bidding and of having a third party decide questions of safety and damage. Many states have regulations that the logger must satisfy before he finishes, such as cutting evergreen slash (the tops and other debris) to a low height to reduce the risk of fire, and taking steps to reduce erosion. If you have special concern for the condition the roads are left in, possible erosion problems, or trees you don't want cut, the forester will specifically include these in your contract.

When the harvest is over, attention must be given to growing new trees in the woodlot. Planting seedlings or spreading seed is sometimes necessary, but usually natural regeneration will do the job.

Artificial regeneration is usually limited to conifers in woodlots that have been clearcut or to new plantations on former agricultural land. Hardwoods, with the exception of

prized species like walnut, are rarely planted for future sawlogs. Whenever trees are planted or seeded, it is important that they be suitable for the local soil, climate and water conditions. It is wise to plant species that are in reasonable demand. Thousands of acres of red pine were planted in the past, but there is currently so little demand that nobody knows what to do with them now. If you plan to start a tree plantation, remember that plantations need thinning just as often as natural stands.

Trees regenerate naturally in two ways: by germinating from seeds and by sprouting from stumps. Most hardwood species send up stump sprouts after a tree is cut. Some species are more prolific sprouters than others, and small-diameter stumps sprout more than do stumps of large diameter. Stump sprouts start life with a large root system and they often grow more than 5 ft. the first year. The problem with such sprouts is that there are often too many of them, and a stump may sprout double, triple and quadruple-stemmed trees. Cutting all but the best sprout from each stump may solve this.

In a given location, trees of a given species tend to have years of good seed production and years of poor seed production. It is often possible to affect the species composition of naturally regenerated forest stands by timing harvesting to follow an abundant seed crop of the species you wish to favor.

Although our efforts at harvesting and regeneration parallel those of the gardener, we do not have the gardener's ability to change crops from year to year. Our actions in the woodlot shape the forest for generations to come and that alone should give us pause to think twice about which trees we cut and which we encourage to grow. Few of us will live long enough to harvest sawlogs from seedlings we plant, but our children and grandchildren will benefit from our foresight if we decide wisely. □

For more information . . .

State, county and consulting foresters have lots of information on basic woodlot management, and much of it is free. Government foresters are often able to visit woodlots and offer advice, also free of charge. Some government foresters offer services at a nominal charge or they may charge for work that requires more than one day to complete. Check the white pages of your phone directory under the county and state listings to find the local government forester. If none are listed, ask the county agricultural extension agency for advice.

Consulting foresters are independent professionals, who must be licensed in some states. They can be contacted through the yellow pages, but it's better to check with the local government forester. Consultation fees vary, so discuss price before hiring a forester. Local foresters should also have information about tax advantages offered by some states to encourage woodlot management. Vermont's program, for example, reduces by 80% the taxes on our woodlot.

The tools described in this article, if unavailable locally, can be ordered from the following suppliers: Forestry Suppliers Inc., 205 Rankin St., P.O. Box 8397, Jackson, Miss. 39204; Ben Meadows Co., 3589 Broad St., Atlanta, Ga. 30366, and T.S.I., P.O. Box 151, 25 Ironia Rd., Flanders, N.J. 07836.

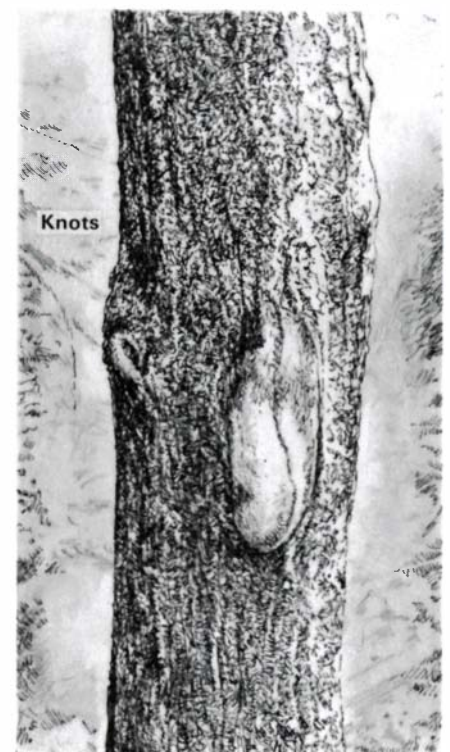
The American Forestry Association (1319 18th St. N.W., Washington, D.C. 20036) publishes a monthly magazine called *American Forests*. Useful books include: *Essentials of Forestry Practice* by Charles H. Stoddard, Ronald Press Co., New York, N.Y. and *Handbook for Eastern Timber Harvesting* (stock number 001-001-00443-0) by Fred C. Simmons, from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402. A booklet, *Woodlot Management*, is available from Garden Way Publishing, Charlotte, Vt. 05445.

Tree quality: the good, the bad and the firewood

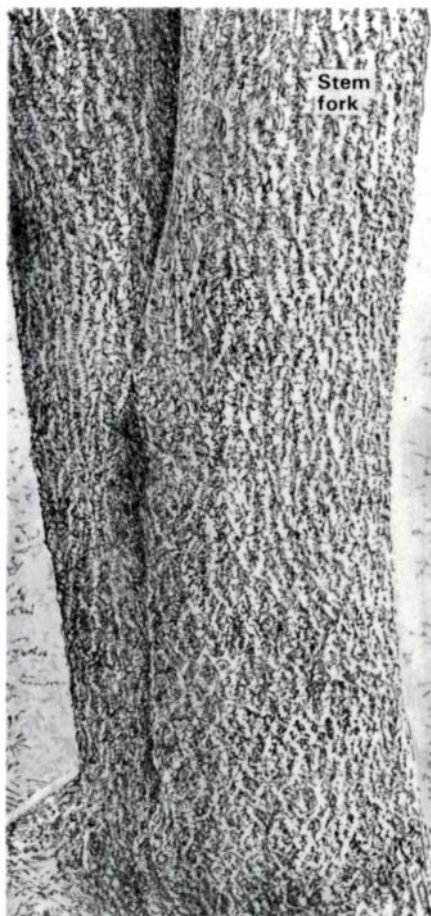
It doesn't take a trained eye to spot a perfect sawlog: it rises arrow-straight and branchless for 15 ft. or 20 ft., large enough to yield clear boards and showing no signs of wounds, fungus or insect damage. Deciding which of the many less than ideal trees in the woodlot will yield good quality lumber and which to consign to the cordwood pile is more difficult. Here are a few tips to help you make these decisions as you thin and harvest your woodlot.

Crooks: An abrupt zig-zag in the trunk caused by the tree's changing growth direction as it seeks better light. Small crooks can be sawed but larger ones make handling the log difficult.

Curves and bows: Sweeping form in the trunk common in trees growing on hills. Curves occur, like crooks, because the tree wants better light. Trunks with curves usually contain reaction wood, difficult to saw, dry and use (see "Abnormal Wood," *FWW* #26).



Drawings: Christopher Clapp



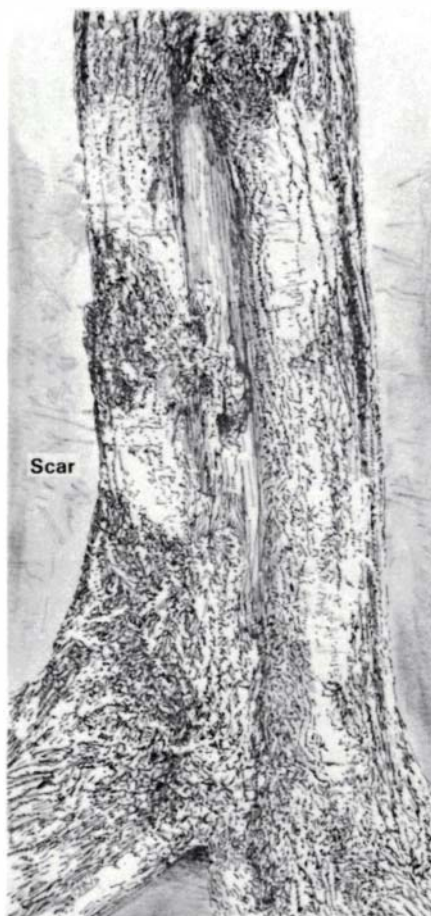
Knots: A common feature in nearly all logs, knots occur where branches grow out of the trunk. If the branch is alive when the tree is cut, the knot will probably be sound. If the branch is dead, particularly if it is large, the knot in the finished lumber may be loose.

Stem forks: Two stems on one trunk occur when the "leader" stem dies or stops growing. A second stem then forms and becomes the new leader. Stems that occur very low on the trunk reduce the lumber value of the logs.

Major dead branches: These occur when a tree is under stress and near death. If there are no good reasons to leave the tree standing, it should be removed for lumber or firewood.

Scars: Called "catfaces," scars are the signs of damage caused by fire or by previous logging operations. The wounds go through the bark to bare wood. If the tree survives, the wood above and below the scars may be sound.

Dead crowns: A healthy crown tops a healthy tree and those with dead or skeletal crowns are usually under stress. When the leaves have fallen check the crown's major branches for smaller branches; if these are numerous, the crown is probably healthy.



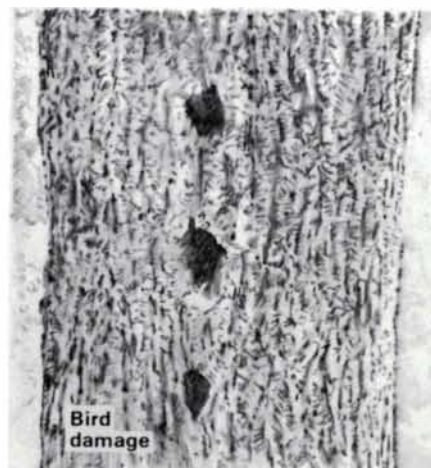
Cracks: Vertical cracks or seams caused by extremely cold weather or lightning can be several feet long and ¼ in. or so wide. The cracks heal over on the surface, but they can ruin a good log.

Insect and bird damage: Worm holes and loose bark can indicate significant insect damage. Bird damage is more apparent and sometimes the two are related because some birds feed on insects infesting trees.

Epicormic branching: Previously shaded trunks exposed to sunlight can grow small branches which cause minute blemishes in lumber cut from the logs. Care should be taken when thinning to keep trunks of potential sawlog trees at least partially shaded.

Overmature trees: Old trees with large, short trunks and heavy upper branches are often survivors from when the forest was an open field. Their lumber value is low but they do serve as wildlife shelters and are sometimes left standing for that reason alone.

Wind or ring shakes: Shakes are rarely detectable by reading a tree's bark but they will turn up as a defect in the lumber. They are caused by wind-created mechanical stresses that separate the tree's annual rings. —I.P., D.P.



Wind shakes in a maple log.

Air-Drying Lumber

Usable stock comes from a carefully stickered stack

by Paul Bertorelli

Air-drying your own lumber can be a cheap alternative to expensive and sometimes unavailable kiln-dried wood. If you live near a sawmill or have your own woodlot, green wood can be had for a fraction the cost of commercially dried stuff. But once you've got the wood, the real challenge is converting it into a material you can use in the shop. Conventional wisdom recommends air-drying green stock for one year per inch of thickness. That seems easy enough, but having seen more than a few piles of stained and checked boards, I suspected there was more to it. I visited Paul Fuge to find out.

Fuge, of Shelton, Conn., has made a business of buying sawmill-green lumber and air-drying it himself. After air-drying, he runs it through his small kiln before selling it. He got into drying his own for the same reason most of us do: he couldn't find decent wood at a price he could afford. Six years and several hundred thousand board feet later, he has learned that there's a bit more to lumber seasoning than neat piles.

Fuge dries thousands of board feet at once, but his techniques can be successfully applied in seasoning any amount of wood. Here's how he does it.

Sites and foundations—The worst checking, staining and warping is liable to happen very soon after the lumber is cut from the log. Therefore, Fuge picks drying sites before he buys lumber, allowing him to quickly stack, sticker and, if conditions warrant, cover his wood. He avoids swampy, damp, low-lying spots, and sites where high winds will dry the wood too quickly. Fuge's stacks are on south-facing slopes where nearby trees and shrubs moderate the winds. He places gravel or tarpaper under the stacks to control ground moisture.

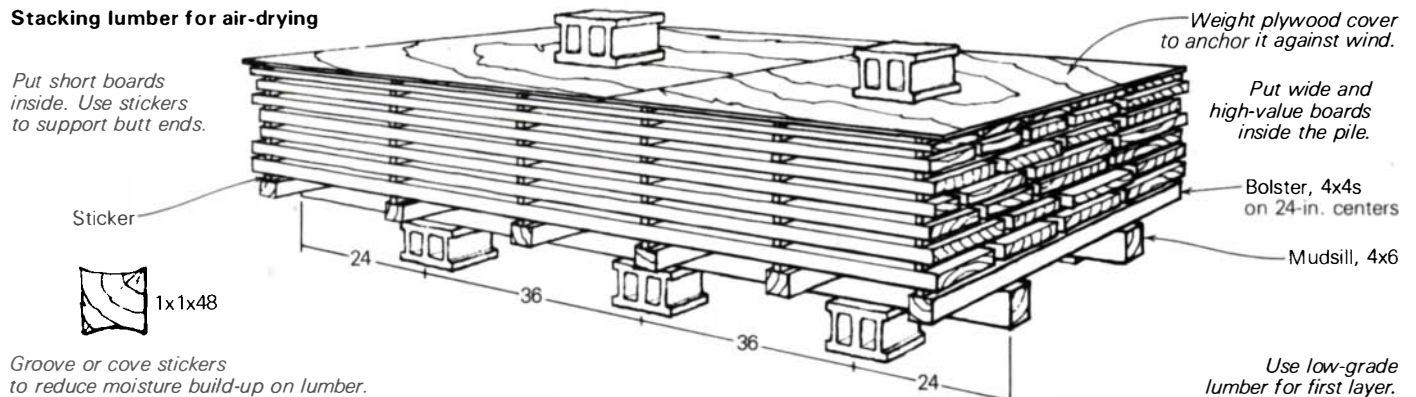
Lumber piles should be oriented with the wood's final use in mind. Some checking is acceptable in siding and structural lumber, for instance, so such stacks can be placed to achieve a high drying rate. That means exposing their sides to the prevailing winds, on a site with plenty of sun. Furniture lumber, on the other hand, should dry more slowly, so pick a more sheltered area and aim the ends of the stack into the wind, so the stickers will prevent it from blowing through the pile.

Fuge builds sturdy foundations for his stacks, and he is careful to keep the boards in parallel planes as the stack is built. The foundation should be high enough to keep the bottom layer of wood 1 ft. off the ground. For a foundation 10 ft. long, Fuge places two rows of three concrete blocks on their sides, each on relatively level ground. The rows are 30 in. apart and the blocks in each row are 36 in. apart. Atop the blocks, Fuge sets a pair of 10-ft. 4x6 timbers called mudsills. He sights along both mudsills to make certain they lie in the same plane, and shims under each concrete block to ensure uniform support. Next, six 4x4 bolsters go across the mudsills on 24-in. centers. With all the bolsters in place, Fuge uses a long, straight board to check them for alignment, and shims any that are not in line. If everything is in the same plane but still isn't level, Fuge is pleased. A pitched stack will shed any water that finds its way inside.

Stacking and stickering—Fuge keeps a large supply of carefully dimensioned stickers on hand. "I like white oak but if I have sassafras or locust, I'll use them too because they're lighter," he says. A 4-ft. long sticker, 1-in. square in section, seems the ideal size. Smaller stickers slow air movement and larger ones waste lumber and add weight. Don't use stickers with sapwood because it harbors the fungi that cause blue or sticker stain, a major source of lumber degrade. Stickers with bark are also rejected, says Fuge, because they deform under the pile's weight. Stickers can be grooved or coved along their length to reduce contact and moisture build-up on the lumber that can also cause stains.

With a sticker on each bolster, Fuge begins his pile with a layer of low-grade lumber that will act as a shield against ground moisture. If he is mixing lumber of various thicknesses, the heavier stock goes in the lower third of the pile where slower drying rates make it less likely to check. Fuge takes great pains to align each sticker vertically with the one below it, and to keep all the stickers over the bolsters' 24-in. centers. If the stickers creep out of line, the boards won't be supported evenly and those at the bottom will kink.

Stacking lumber for air-drying



As he stacks, Fuge also sorts boards by length and width. The longer stock goes to the outside of the pile, the shorter stock to the inside. High quality and extra-wide boards also go on the inside where slower drying makes degrade less likely. Extra stickers can be placed at odd locations inside the pile where the butt ends of short pieces meet between the fixed 24-in. centers. Bowed boards should be stacked with the bows facing each other, allowing the weight of the pile to straighten them. Cupped boards are stacked with cups down, permitting water that seeps into the stack to drain.

As the pile rises, Fuge sometimes finds that the sawmill has given him lumber tapered or wedge-shaped in thickness. To keep everything in the right plane, he keeps some odd-sized stickers around so he can shim out the variations. If the stack is building neatly, Fuge isn't afraid to make it plenty high—those in his yard go 10 ft. and better. "I figure if I'm going to go to the trouble to build a good foundation, there's no point in starting another pile unless I have to," he says. Mixing species is okay too, but you must remember that different woods have different drying rates. If the stack will be taken down all at once, it should be air-dried long enough to suit the slowest-drying wood.

When the stack is complete, Fuge tops it out with a layer of low-grade lumber followed by a roof of sawmill slabwood, plywood or other materials, canted to shed water, and anchored against the wind. Fuge advises against using plastic for roofs because it slows ventilation in the top layer and quickly decomposes and starts falling apart in sunlight. "Besides," he adds, "it looks like hell."

Moisture control and maintenance—With the lumber stacked and roofed, Fuge turns his attention to controlling the drying rates and minimizing degrade. If he has built his pile during the peak drying months—April to October in the Northeast—he coats the butt ends of wide and heavy boards with glue or latex paint. This slows end-grain moisture loss and thereby reduces checking. "But if you don't coat them in the first two or three days, forget it, because the damage will be done already," Fuge warns. If a stack goes up in late fall or winter, little need be done until warmer weather approaches. And when spring does arrive, Fuge is ready. He shields his lumber against severe drying rates of hot, dry days by covering the pile with burlap or old blankets. The fabric is porous enough to slow (but not stop) moisture loss from the wood. As the weather moderates, Fuge uncovers the piles. If a stack end faces into the sun, it should be shielded with fabric or plywood throughout the drying cycle.

Fuge likes to leave 4/4 and 5/4 stock air-drying for a full season, that is, April to October. So a stack that goes up in the middle of the summer isn't considered dry until the middle of the following summer. Stock 6/4 and thicker may need two but certainly no more than three full drying seasons.

"After it's been out that long, it isn't going to get any drier and you might as well move it inside," Fuge says. He monitors moisture content with an electric moisture meter but an ordinary household oven and an accurate scale or balance will work just as well. Find moisture content by cutting a 1-in. cube about 2 ft. in from the end of a sample board. Weigh the cube and cook it in the oven at 212° to 221° until it no longer loses weight. Calculate moisture content by subtracting the oven-dry weight from the sample's wet weight. Then divide that figure by the oven-dry weight and multiply by



Paul Fuge makes sturdy foundations for his lumber stacks. He checks alignment of bolsters with a long, straight board fresh from the sawmill. To build a foundation with lighter stock, shore up with more concrete blocks or make a smaller pile.

100. If he is in a hurry, Fuge checks the stack's moisture content every two weeks. When it reaches the 18% to 22% range, it's ready for the kiln even if it hasn't been out for a full season. The one year per inch guide is hardly written in stone. Vagaries in climate and species moisture content and drying characteristics make monitoring the lumber a must.

If you don't have a kiln, bring your air-dried lumber indoors to dry for final use. Fuge recommends stacking and sticking it in a heated, dry room for an entire winter. A small fan to circulate air through the stack will speed things along and by spring the lumber should be ready. "If you're willing to live with your wood in the house and treat it like you treat yourself, there's no reason you can't dry it entirely without a kiln," Fuge says. If domestic considerations make indoor drying impossible, Fuge suggests a dry garage, attic or shed. Any space in fact, will work except the basement—even the driest of basements is probably too moist for further wood seasoning. Once wood is dried down to about 12% it will pick up moisture in a damp basement.

With air and inside drying complete, stack your lumber tightly without stickers in a dry place. Further air movement through the pile will only restore part of the moisture you've worked so hard to remove. □

Paul Bertorelli is assistant editor of this magazine. For more on drying lumber see these FWW back issues: R. Bruce Hoadley's Water and Wood in #4, Drying Wood in #6, and Wood has to breathe, doesn't it? in #14; William W. Rice's Dry Kiln in #6; Paul J. Bois' Solar Kiln in #7; Dale Nish's Harvesting Green Wood in #16; and Sam Talarico's A Barn For Air-Drying Lumber in #22.

Shop-Built Panel Saw

Cutting plywood sheets down to size

by William F. Nelson

To support my woodworking hobby I practice architecture. Last year when we decided to move our offices, I offered to build the cabinets, and my partners accepted the proposal without hesitation. After drawing the cabinets and working up the bill of materials, which called for 75 sheets of plywood, I suddenly realized that my small shop had neither the space nor the equipment to handle that volume of material. Despite awful visions of wrestling dozens of cumbersome pieces of plywood around the shop and over the table saw, I was committed to the project and had to proceed.

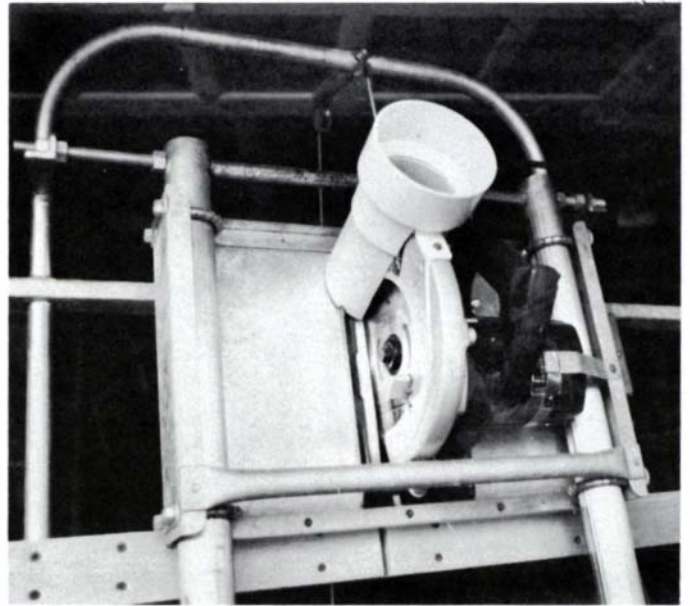
A couple of weeks before, I had been in a woodworking-equipment store in Houston. One of the things that had caught my attention was a panel saw, the kind with a vertical frame for holding large panels and with a circular saw mounted in a sliding carriage. I certainly couldn't afford to spend the \$850 the thing cost, so I decided to make one.

I began by making a freehand sketch of the frame and the saw carriage, and was able to solve most of the construction problems on paper. The basic triangulated framework was fabricated from ordinary thin-walled electrical conduit and Unistrut steel channels, which I bought from an industrial supply store. Unistrut channels are commonly used to build warehouse shelving units and pipe racks. Because I have an acetylene welding rig, I decided to braze the metal parts of the frame together (figure 1a), but you could make it just as strong by using an assembly of wood top and bottom rails drilled to receive the vertical tubing members, fastening them together with sheet-metal screws through the back side of the wood into the tubing (figure 2). The framework must be rigid; it shouldn't rack or twist.

When the metalworking was done, I added the horizontal wooden strips and the wooden stock-support shelf at the bottom. I fastened the wood to the metal tubing with countersunk sheet-metal screws, which meant drilling pilot holes through one wall of the tubing. Be sure that the support shelf is perfectly straight and square to the frame. The saw carriage must clear the shelf and the blade must travel through it to complete the cut; the measurements given in the drawing accommodate 4x8 panels. For metric size plywood (about 5 ft. square), make the frame 1 ft. taller.

The part of the design that gave me trouble was the sliding saw carriage and guide bars. It was easy enough to make and attach the tubular guide bars to the frame, but providing for sliding bearings between the carriage and the bars was another matter. Finally I decided to use U-bolts on the carriage sides and to reduce friction and binding against the guide bars by making roller bearings from short lengths of stainless-steel tubing, whose inside diameter was the right size to fit over the U-bolts (detail A).

The guide bars are attached to the center tubular uprights at the top by means of right-angle flanges, threaded rod and nuts, as shown in detail B. The flanges can be either brazed or



The counterbalanced saw carriage rides on steel-tube guide bars. U-bolts sheathed with short lengths of steel tubing act as bearings.

bolted to the uprights. Nuts on the threaded rod allow the guide bars to be adjusted so that the saw carriage will travel at a precise 90° to the base on which the workpiece rests, with no play between carriage and guide bars. At the bottom of the frame, the guide bars are fastened with a threaded rod to a 1/8-in. steel plate which is attached to the Unistrut bottom rail.

The saw carriage itself was the only part that I couldn't make in my shop. Because the design required channel-shaped flanges at each side to accommodate the U-bolts, I had to have it bent (brake-formed) in a sheet-metal shop. Two pulleys at the top of the uprights (one of them is fastened to an arm that is welded to the frame) and a counterweight complete the saw-carriage assembly. Without the counterweight, the saw is difficult to manage and will not stay at the top of the frame while you position the stock. To determine the exact weight to counterbalance the saw, I experimented with a plastic gallon jug filled with water.

My inexpensive 7/8-in. circular saw bolts to the carriage through the saw's base and is reinforced by a hose clamp and 18-ga. steel strap around the motor housing. I use a carbide-tipped blade because the glues in plywood and particleboard quickly dull standard blades. I installed a toggle switch at the top of the frame so I can pull the saw into the cut with the tubular crossmember on the carriage rather than by grasping the trigger switch in the plastic handle. I connected the saw to my dust collection system by setting a 3-in.-to-4-in. step-up PVC drain coupling astride the sawblade housing; a flexible hose fits snugly into the 4-in. part of the coupling (see photo above).

The saw is easy to use, and will produce accurate finish cuts the full width of a 4x8 plywood panel. It has been a real time-saver, too. Without rushing I was able to cut seven sheets of plywood into 62 finished pieces in 90 min. My cabinetmaking project took only 10 weeks, working evenings and weekends. During that time I also built myself a desk and credenza. I have since found the panel saw useful in ways I hadn't anticipated. Because it cuts at a perfect 90°, it's just the right tool for crosscutting long boards. With casters, the saw can be moved around the shop and then stored where it's least in the way. □

William F. Nelson lives in Beaumont, Texas. Photo and drawings by the author.

Fig. 1a: Brazed Unistrut construction

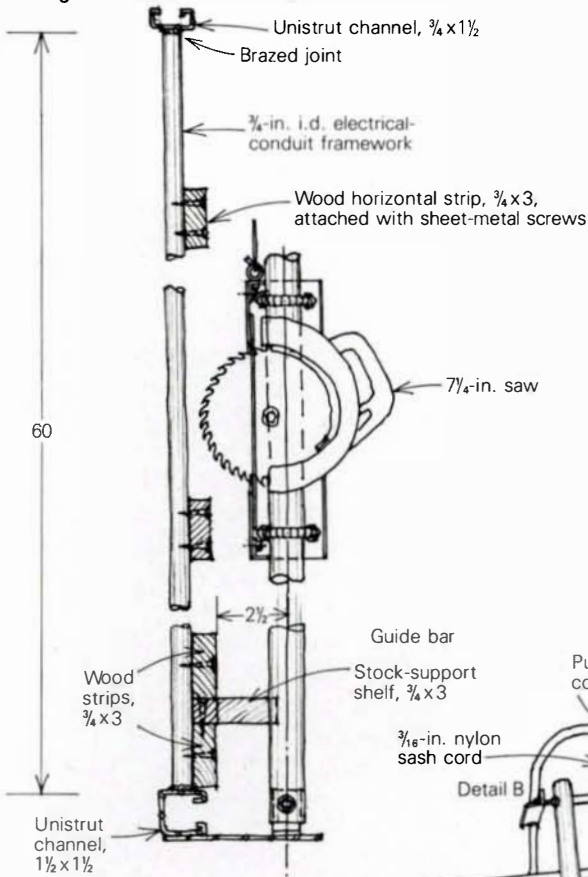


Fig. 2: Alternate construction

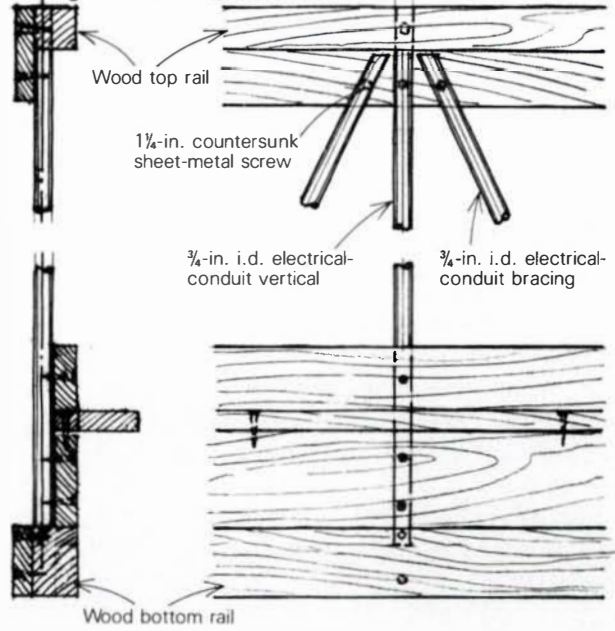
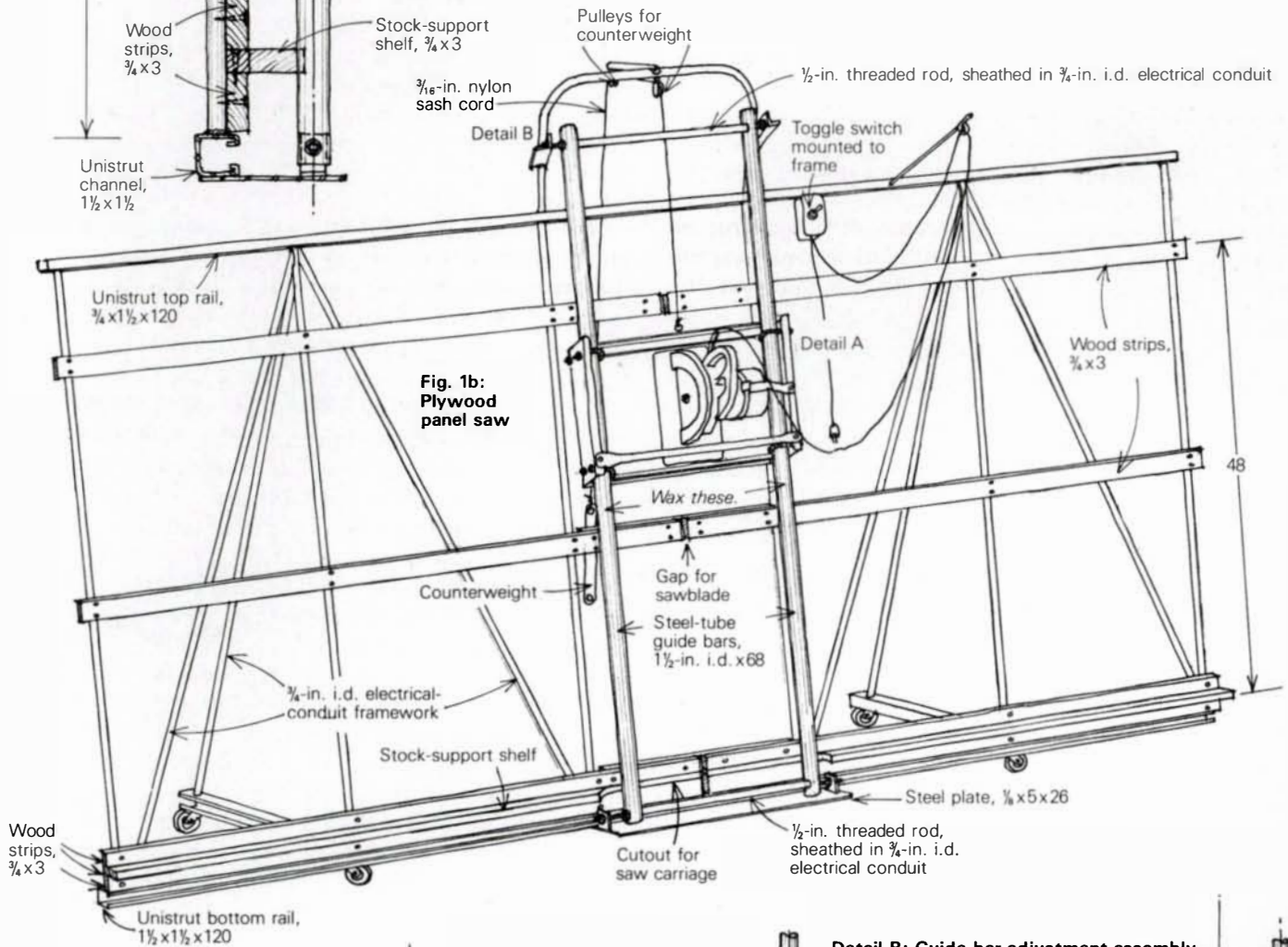
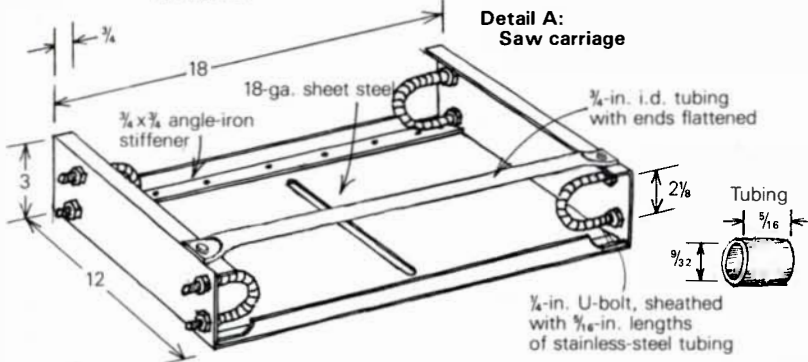


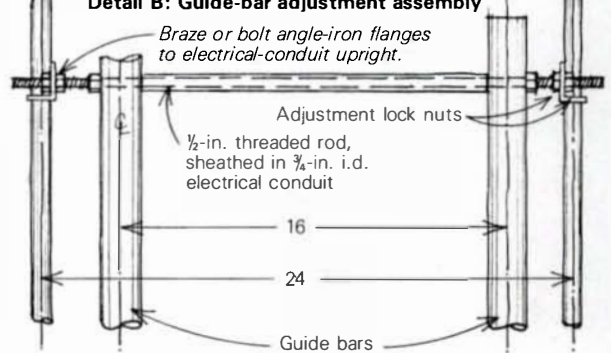
Fig. 1b: Plywood panel saw



Detail A: Saw carriage



Detail B: Guide-bar adjustment assembly



Twist Turning

Traditional method combines lathe and carving

by Eric Schramm

Spiral or twist turning was introduced in Europe during the 16th century and was used widely for chair and table legs in 17th-century England. Today, the technique finds uses in antique reproduction and repair and for the Mediterranean-style furniture popular in the Southwest and West.

Spirals, solid and hollow, are not turnings in the true sense of the word because most of the work is really carving. A spiral resembles a screw thread; it has pitch and lead. Pitch is the distance from center to center of consecutive ridges or bines. Lead is the distance the spiral advances along the cylinder in each revolution. In a single-twist spiral, pitch and lead are the same. A spiral with a short pitch and great depth will be weak because much of the long-grain wood has been removed. A longer pitch will be stronger but less pleasing to the eye. I find that a pitch about equal to or slightly less than the cylinder's diameter produces the nicest effect. The precise pitch, however, is governed by cylinder length, if the spiral bines are to be spaced equally and are to start and finish their lead symmetrically.

To lay out a single spiral, you must divide the cylinder's circumference into four equal parts. A quick method is to wrap a strip of paper around the circumference and trim it so the ends just meet. Remove the paper and fold it in half once, and then in half again. The fold marks, which will quarter the cylinder, can be transferred directly to the workpiece with a pencil. With the cylinder on the lathe and the tool rest acting as a straightedge, draw four lines along the length of the workpiece passing through these marks (figure 1a).

Next divide the cylinder's length into spaces that are equal to or slightly less than the cylinder diameter (figure 1b). These marks are the pitch lines and represent the distance between the spiral's ridges. Pitch lines drawn, divide the space between them into four equal spaces. You can now sketch the spiral ridge by drawing a continuous line diagonally through one after another of the quarter spaces between the pitch lines. A scrap of sandpaper makes a good straightedge (figure 1c) for drawing the diagonal lines. If you've done things properly, the ridge line will cross a pitch line with each revolution. With the ridge line completed, draw in another line parallel to it to roughly locate the spiral's groove. The ridge line will remain intact through the carving process.

A double spiral, the most popular form, is laid out similarly. The pitch remains the same, but the lead doubles. So this time, divide the space between pitch lines into two instead of four sections. Draw one ridge line as before, passing diagonally through the squares. In the length of one diameter, this ridge line will traverse 180°. Start a second ridge line 180° from the first, and draw the diagonals so the line remains 180° from the first throughout the length of the cylinder. Triple spirals can be plotted by dividing the circumference into six parts and starting the ridge lines at 120° intervals.

Ridge lines can be drawn also by wrapping a strip of paper

around the turning, leaving a slight space between turns. A pencil line is then traced through the spiral space.

Actual cutting of the spiral is tedious but not difficult. First make a saw cut on the line that represents the bottom of the groove. Start with a saw with a strip of wood clamped to it or some masking tape to indicate the depth of cut, which should be about a quarter of the workpiece diameter (photo A). Rotate the work slowly while cutting so the kerf will follow the line. After sawing, the space between the bines is shaped by making broad V-cuts with a sharp chisel or No. 2 carver's gouge (photo B). Use a round file to clean up these spaces (photo C), then dress up the rounds with a flat cabinet file. The spiral can be rotated in the lathe by hand to permit longer file strokes and smoother results. The ridge line should be preserved throughout the process. Finish the spiral with sandpaper or use a shop-made pinwheel sander such as that described in *FWW* #30, p. 67.

Another variation of the double or triple spiral is the hollow spiral where the bines of the spiral are separated by an opening. Hollow or open spirals generally lack sufficient strength for furniture legs, but are quite effective as candlesticks or lamp bases. The work is laid out as for the double or triple spiral, with the cutting line that represents the bottom of the groove used as a drilling line. A V-block is used when drilling to assure accuracy (photo D). The holes go through the turning and are best drilled half way through from each side to avoid splintering. Finish the shape with chisels, files and sandpaper (photo E). One of the best tools for cleaning out the inside is an ordinary sharp carving knife. Irregularities and tool marks can be removed with strips of sanding belt, pulled back and forth around the bines (photo F). Make the final strokes in the direction of the grain. A great deal of patience and skill is required for neat work. The wood used should be tough, hard, and free from defects.

Tapered spirals for flame finials are also possible. To lay out a taper, you must make the pitch vary so that it equals the diminishing diameter of the workpiece. Begin as above by striking four lines along the length of the taper. Then measure the diameter of the taper's large end and mark this distance on one of the four longitudinal lines. At this mark, measure the diameter again and mark this length along the taper. Repeat this process until you reach the end of the cylinder. Adjust the various pitch lines you have drawn so that they diminish proportionately. Draw in the ridge line and proceed with the cuts as in straight work. To make a flame finial, draw four ridge lines starting at 90° intervals from the large end of the taper. Use double ridge lines about 1/8 in. apart, and use gouges and files to remove the waste. I find a Moto Tool with a round burr a good tool for forming the flame. □

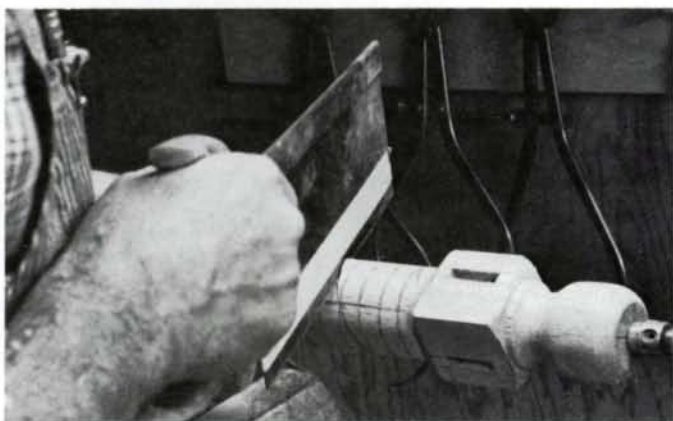
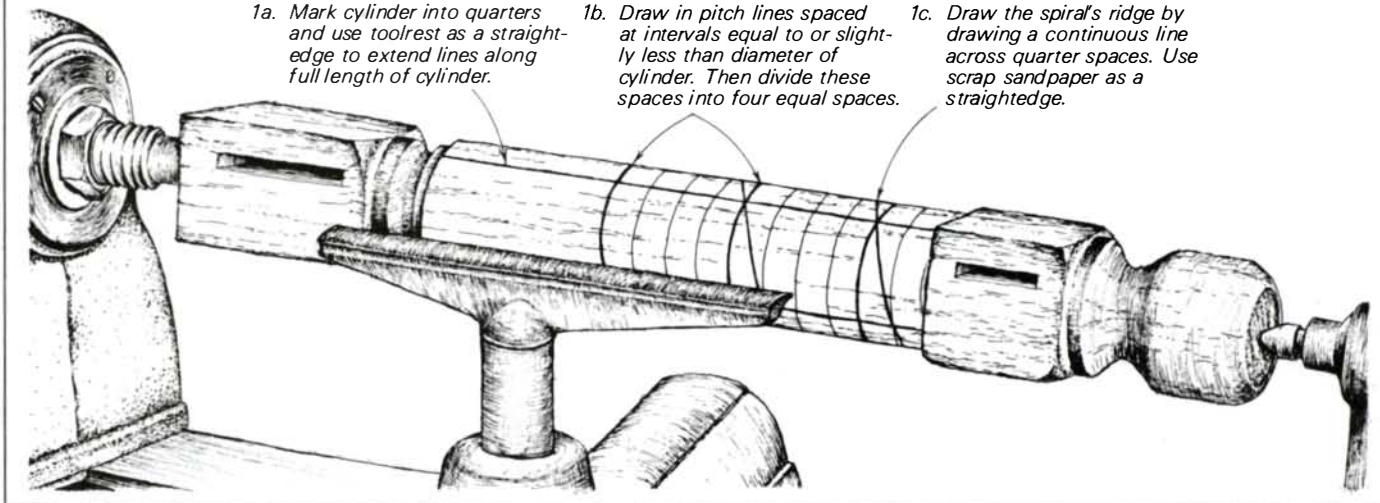
Eric Schramm designs and builds custom furniture in Los Gatos, Calif. Photos by Robert Schramm.

Fig. 1 Laying out the spiral

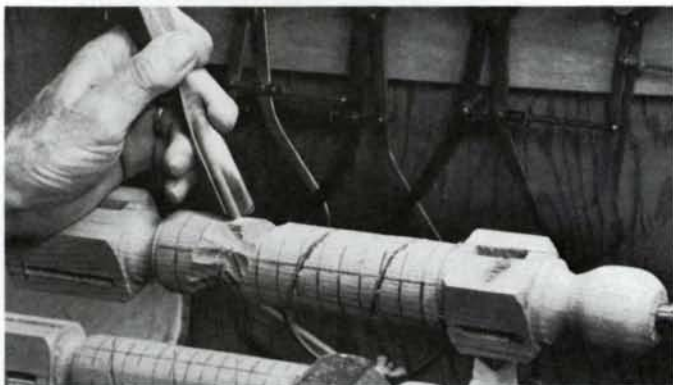
1a. Mark cylinder into quarters and use toolrest as a straight-edge to extend lines along full length of cylinder.

1b. Draw in pitch lines spaced at intervals equal to or slightly less than diameter of cylinder. Then divide these spaces into four equal spaces.

1c. Draw the spiral's ridge by drawing a continuous line across quarter spaces. Use scrap sandpaper as a straightedge.



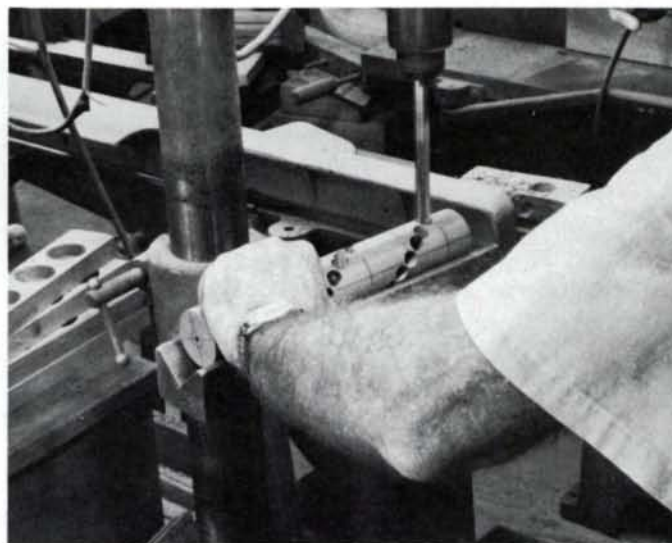
A With the layout complete, use a backsaw to cut the initial kerf which will serve as a guide for carving the spiral's grooves.



B Shaping the spiral is hard work. Start with a chisel or No. 2 carver's gouge. You can control the shape of the grooves and ridges by varying the angle of your chisel cuts.



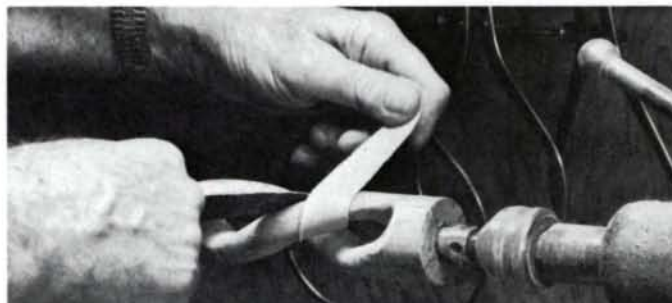
C After carving, use rasps and sandpaper to form the spiral in the shape you want. Here, sandpaper is wrapped around a rasp that acts as a sanding block to maintain the radius.



D The hollow spiral layout is identical to that of the solid spiral. To waste the center of a hollow spiral, Schramm uses a drill press with the stock anchored against turning and slipping by a V-block.



E After the drill press, it's back to carving by hand. The final shape of the hollow spiral is done with chisels, knives, rasps and sandpaper. Lathe-mounting allows the work to be positioned while carving.



F Cloth-backed sanding paper holds up well for sanding the bines of a hollow spiral. Old sanding belts can be cut into strips for this job. Use progressively finer grits to get a good finish.

A Mechanical Twist

The tablesaw can be used to lay out a helix and to cut its initial kerf at the same time. Then with a molding head on the saw and a guide pin running in that kerf, the bulk of the waste can be machined away. The basic method is to clamp an angled fence across the saw table just ahead of the sawblade, which is raised only $\frac{1}{4}$ in. above the table surface. A blank cylinder, lodged against the table and the fence and rotated over the blade, will feed itself along the fence regularly and automatically. The result is a helical kerf whose pitch is governed by the angle of the fence. A cylinder turned between square pommels, what you'd want for chair or table legs, can also be tablesawn in this way by screwing free-spinning end-blocks onto the stock, as shown at right. The end-blocks raise the stock off the table and away from the fence so its square sections don't interfere with its rotation.

As in all twist turning, the first step is to turn the blank cylinder, straight or between square pommels, depending on the application. There's uncertainty in these procedures so make five blanks if you need four legs. Then choose the pitch angle (α), which determines how quickly the helix rises—that is, its pitch, or lead, how far apart its ridges are. A pitch angle around 18° saws a helix whose lead (L) about equals its diameter (D). This pitch angle is set by locking the miter gauge at 72° (that is, 90° minus 18°), and using the gauge to locate the fence on the saw table. Whatever the angle, the fence should be located so that the center of the blank cylinder is directly above the center of the sawblade. Moving the fence forward or backward has the same effect as changing its angle. To saw a double helix whose ridges are still one diameter apart, use a pitch angle around 32° , which means set the miter gauge at 58° . Pitch angle (α), diameter (D) and lead (L) can be figured with the following formula:

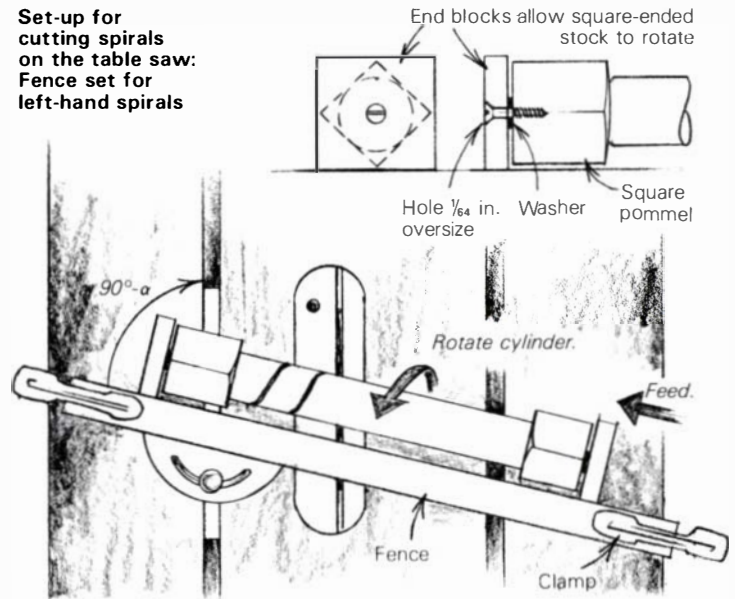
$$\tan \alpha = \frac{L}{\pi D}$$

Always use a sturdy fence that's more than twice as long as the stock—a length of 2x4 is good. When the fence slopes away from the operator from right to left, the resulting helix will be like a left-handed thread. When the fence slopes away from left to right, the helix will be right-handed. Always feed the stock from the near side of the sawblade (the downhill side), always rotate it against the sawblade's rotation (so the blade doesn't self-feed), and always keep your hands well clear of the blade's path. For a double spiral, start the second kerf at a point 180° opposite the first.

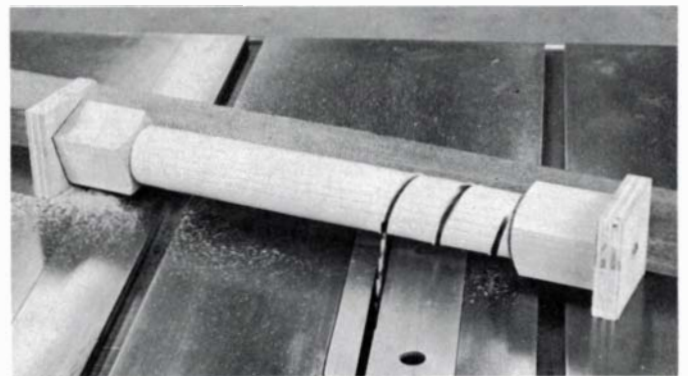
After the helical kerf is cut, you can remount the stock on the lathe for carving, or you can further shape it with the molding head. Use coving knives in the head, and make a snugly fitting wooden insert for the tablesaw throat. Set a small dowel in the face of the fence (photo), just long enough to catch in the kerf. Fit this fence pin into the kerf and use the miter gauge (set as before) to locate the stock in relation to a molding knife. Clamp the fence to the saw table and rotate the stock into the molding head, slowly and carefully. The pin will automatically feed the stock. Shaping with the molding head has to be done in one pass because the cut removes the guide kerf. After the molding knives have done what they can, the helix can be cleaned up with carving tools, rasps and sandpaper. A strip of cloth-backed sandpaper in a bowsaw frame will speed the chore.

—Larry Green

Set-up for cutting spirals on the table saw: Fence set for left-hand spirals



Position fence so stock center and saw arbor are vertically in line. Use miter gauge to set fence angle. Raise sawblade to cut $\frac{1}{4}$ in. into cylinder. Free-spinning endblocks provide clearance for square pommels, as shown in the detail at top.



Rotate cylinder into the sawblade to cut helical kerf, above. It will feed itself along the angled fence.

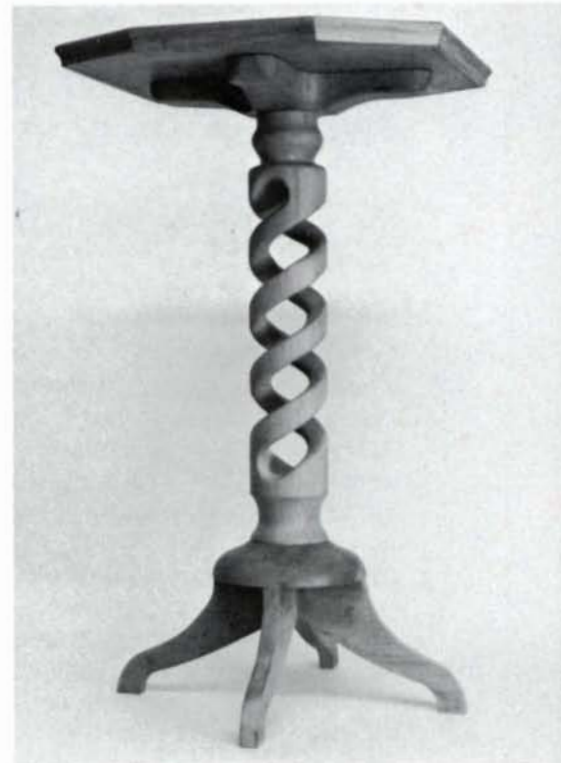
Dowel pin set in fence will guide kerfed cylinder past molding head (right). Cut must be deep because a second cut is not possible (below). Go slowly to minimize tear-out.



A Portfolio of Spirals



When he was in elementary school, Mark Phenicie saw a vine-festooned tree with a naturally spiraled trunk that inspired him to try making a spiral himself. Phenicie, of Berwyn, Pa., has been at it ever since. He carves hollow spirals with as many as six separate bines winding about the cylinder, and he sometimes adds V-grooves to the face of the bines for further embellishment. Phenicie's spirals go into making decorative accessories such as the pedestal plant stand in the photo at left and furniture components like the coffee table legs and stretcher pictured above. Instead of drawing the spiral's ridge line directly on the stock, Phenicie covers the cylinder in masking tape first. He then cuts away the masking tape where the spiral's groove will be and he uses the remaining tape as a guideline when cutting out the center of the spiral. Instead of drilling out the waste, Phenicie uses a router. He leaves the work in his lathe and routs out the grooves with a series of shallow cuts, turning the work by hand to better position the router. Since the router usually lacks sufficient depth to completely hollow the spiral, Phenicie uses a Surform tool to finish the hollowing and to rough out the bines. He uses cloth-backed sandpaper to smooth the spiral's final shape. Photos: Mark Phenicie.



Fred Johnson of Andover, Mass., used the drill-press method to hollow the spiral for this pedestal table. He used a keyhole saw, rasps, rifflers and 'sheet upon sheet' of sandpaper to finish the piece. Photo: Fred Johnson.

J.R. Thomas of Cerrillos, N.M. designs spirals into his Spanish-influence furniture. But he doesn't use fancy formulas or complicated layouts to make them. "I just screw around with a bevel gauge until I get something that pleases my eye," Thomas says. The pieces shown here were done for a Santa Fe builder. Thomas carves his spirals entirely with V-gouges and in-cannels. He puts all the legs for a piece in his vise, carves them at once on the square stock, and finishes each individually with rasps and sandpaper. Photo: J.R. Thomas.



Vietnamese Planes

Cong Huy Vo turns scrap into tools

by Curtis Erpelding

When Cong Huy Vo, a Vietnamese boat refugee and furniture maker, settled in Portland, Oregon, he quickly found a job in a small antique shop. The first day at work, after looking around in dismay at the shop's limited selection of tools, he immediately set about making his own. I was beginning to make tools myself, so on a friend's recommendation, I paid Cong a visit.

Passing through the showroom full of Mission Oak and Grand Rapids-style pieces from the turn of this century—considered antiques here in the West—I entered the workshop in the rear of the store. Cong, a short, wiry man looking a decade younger than his 35 years, greeted me with a shy smile. He speaks only a few words of English, but with the traveler's repertoire of facial expressions and pantomime we communicated. He told me about his life in Saigon, his apprenticeship and his tool making.

When he was 14 years old, Cong apprenticed with his great-uncle, working four years for only room and board to learn the skills of carver and cabinetmaker. The apprentices all learned to make their own planes and carving tools, since there were few manufactured tools and little money to buy them. This necessity was no disadvantage. As Western woodworkers are rediscovering, home-made tools aren't that difficult to make, and they can be designed and modified to suit the individual and the problem at hand.

About 20 people, two per bench, worked in the Saigon shop. Apprentices learned how to work by hand, even though the shop had basic stationary machines: table saws, jointers, and so on. Each apprentice made a piece of furniture from start to finish, from the framing-out and carcass work to the carving, detailing and finishing. At the end of his apprenticeship Cong, like every other graduate, was dismissed—cheap beginners were preferred to wage-earning journeymen. Cong quickly set up his own workshop, training his brother, father and uncle to make everyday furniture and, from time to time, an elaborately carved cabinet for a wealthy client. In 1979, Cong left Vietnam, crammed with 33 others in a boat only 33 feet long, 8 feet wide and 3 feet deep. After 15 days at sea and 8 months in Thailand, Cong arrived in Portland. He brought nothing with him but his skill.

I first met Cong about six months after his arrival. He'd already made a bench plane as long as the western jack (about 14 in.), a rabbet plane, a dovetail plane with metal sole, and several special molding planes. Each had a simple beauty and logic, and some had features that were new to me. All the planes were made of a dense tropical hardwood resembling wengé, provided by the owner of the shop.

To make a plane, Cong dresses a block of wood to the appropriate size, then scribes lines for the opening with a square and his simple marking gauge. He bores out the waste and chisels the opening for the iron: mouth, throat and bed. The inner surfaces looked reasonably clean to me, but Cong



Grasping his homemade jack plane by the handles set behind its blade, Cong planes an edge. He controls the cut with his wrists, index fingers and thumbs.

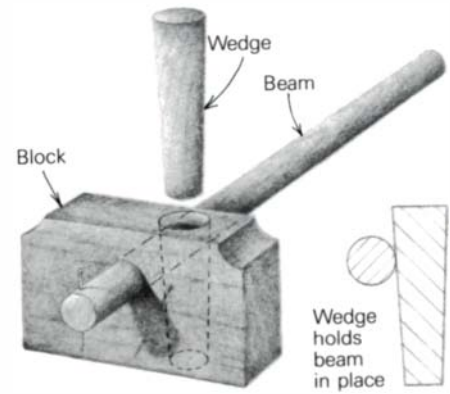
pointed to the bed where the iron would rest and shook his head disapprovingly. It needed further smoothing, which Cong accomplished with a float, a file-like tool traditionally used for this purpose by makers of wooden planes (*FWW* #30, p. 63). Cong made his float by heating an old file to red hot and cooling it very slowly. The steel thus annealed, Cong easily filed or ground off the old teeth and cut new, deep ones with a cold chisel, straight across the file, spaced about $\frac{1}{8}$ in. apart. He hardened the float by reheating it to a red color and then quenching it in oil.

Cong cut his jack-plane iron and cap iron from a used industrial hacksaw blade. The wedge, a piece of drill rod bent

A quick marking gauge

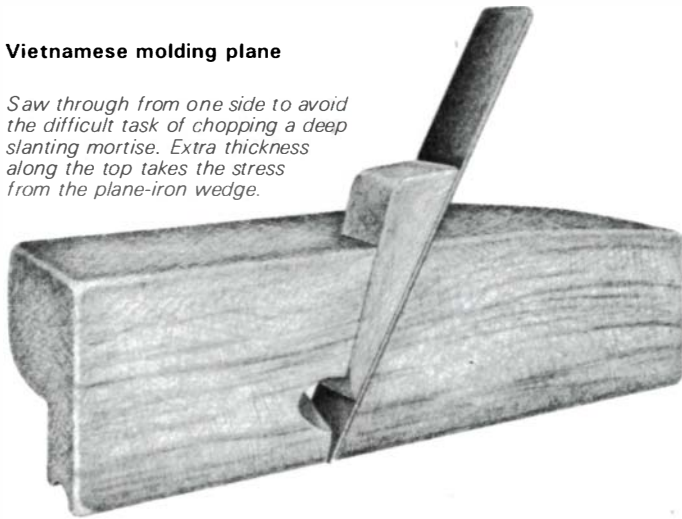
Cong's marking gauge consists of two ½-in. dowels and a wooden block, and can be made in a few minutes. Bore a ½-in. hole for the beam through the center of the block. With a ⅞-in. machine bit, bore a hole for the wedge at a right angle to the beam hole, just breaking through its side wall. Taper the wedge hole by moving the drill bit around in it. You can avoid widening the bottom of the hole by clamping a

piece of scrap to the gauge block, slightly wider than the gauge block and bored with a hole of the same diameter. The center of rotation will be in the scrap, ensuring a straight taper through the gauge. Carve or sand the dowel to fit snugly and drive a small brad through the end of the beam. You can make several gauges at once: substitute a pencil lead or a slitting cutter for the brad, or make longer beams for panel marking.



Vietnamese molding plane

Saw through from one side to avoid the difficult task of chopping a deep slanting mortise. Extra thickness along the top takes the stress from the plane-iron wedge.



to a U-shape with its ends tapered, is held in place by a pin that spans the plane's throat. The plane is adjusted with a steel hammer, as are Japanese planes. Their construction also resembles that of Japanese planes, but Cong pushes instead of pulls all of his planes. A ½-in. dowel fixed through the block behind the iron and wedge serves as a handle. The old floor-jack and crown-molding planes of the West also had dowel handles. Fixed through the plane's nose, the handles were pulled by an apprentice while the plane was guided by a journeyman. Cong's are one-man planes. He planes by grasping the dowel with one or both hands, standing beside a long board or behind a short one. He does not take a long, continuous shaving, but planes one area at a time as he moves down the board.

Because of their wide throats and poor-quality-steel irons, none of Cong's planes cut as cleanly, as free from tear-out or plane marks, as Japanese or Western wooden planes. In Vietnam, Cong's ordinary furniture didn't require highly finished flat surfaces, and the frame-and-panel construction of his ornate pieces was carved and embellished with split turnings. Planes were used to rough out the framework and panels, and to cut moldings. When flat, unblemished surfaces were required, they were scraped.

Several of Cong's molding planes feature an unusual and simple construction. By cutting the mouth and throat opening for the iron and wedge through one side, he avoids the tedious task of cleaning out an angled, closed mortise. After marking the opening on the face, Cong saws down as deep as

the width of the cutting iron, then chisels out the waste. The thick upper part of the plane accommodates the stress from the wedge, and only the bottom inch or so of the sole is as narrow as the iron, which can be the same width throughout its length. As there is no need for a narrow offset tang like on Western molding plane irons, the wedge can cover the entire width of the iron, reducing chatter. The bodies of some of his edge-molding planes extend below the plane iron, and serve as fences that guide the cut. Like Western planes, the 55° to 60° pitch of the irons in Cong's molding planes is steeper than the 45° pitch of his jack and rabbet planes. This steeper pitch produces more of a scraping cut, reducing tear-out, an important feature since the plane has no cap iron.

Living up to the Vietnamese reputation for resourcefulness, Cong has scavenged many of the materials he uses in his tools. He has ground scratch blades and scrapers from hacksaw blades and from straps of spring steel salvaged from the guts of an overstuffed chair. His gouges are made from lengths of drill rod, using a forge, electric blower and anvil given to him by a neighbor. He shapes the gouges on a homemade swage block made by boring various diameter holes through a chunk of iron and then hacksawing through these at an angle to produce shallow, tapered hollows.

Cong hammers the heated drill rod between a groove in the block and a bar slightly smaller than the groove's diameter. After the general sweep of the gouge has been forged, he grinds the back and edge profile, files or grinds the bevel and tapers the shank to form a tang. The gouge is hardened by reheating to cherry red followed by a quenching in oil. As far as I could tell, Cong did not temper any of his tools after he had hardened them. I watched him make a gouge from the forging to the handle-fitting in 15 minutes, so if one breaks or cracks, another can be made on the spot to take its place. Cong's tools may be rough and ready, but he knows how to get the most out of them.

I visited Cong again last fall. He has married, acquired two cars and moved into a nice apartment. He is still repairing and restoring old factory-made furniture. But he would like to have the chance to make the kind of furniture he made in Vietnam. His tools are evidence of his skill, skill that continues a tradition of self-reliant technology in woodworking. □

Curtis Erpelding makes furniture in Seattle, Wash. He has taught planemaking in a number of workshops around the country. Photo by the author.

Current Work

Iowa harvests a show of contemporary fancy

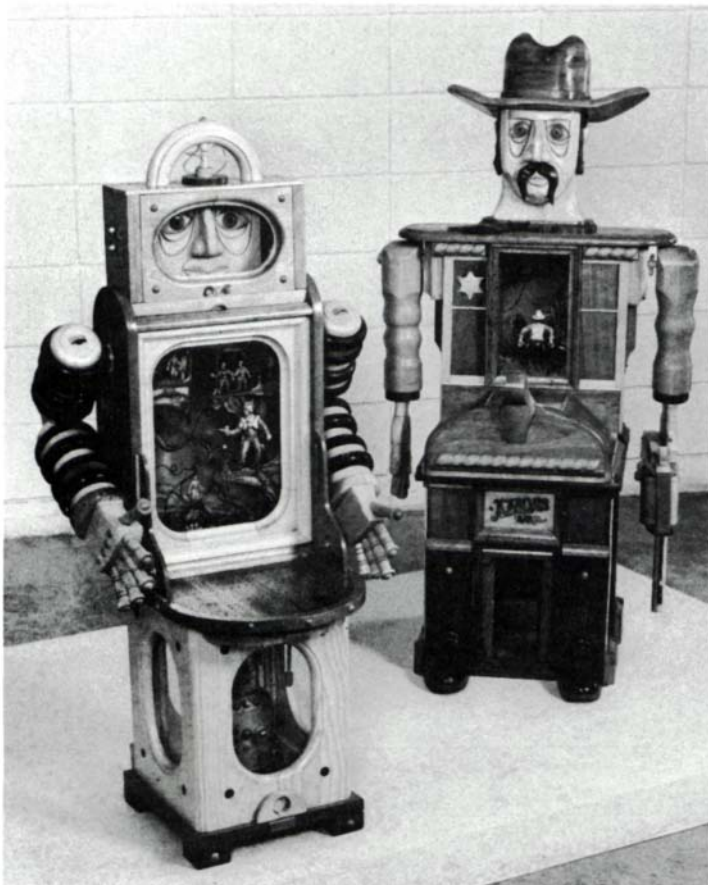
by Rick Mastelli

No four-lane highways link Waterloo, Iowa, with the rest of the country, but that didn't deter this little city (which boasts the world's largest tractor factory) from staging the first regional show of Midwestern woodworking. Last fall, more than 50 pieces made it to the Waterloo Recreation and Arts Center for a month-long exhibition. Art director Clarence Alling had talked with museum and crafts people throughout the Midwest, and the show he composed reflected his sense of humor and whimsy.

Waterloo loved it. Hundreds of people came and were delighted with the playful, fanciful, and often impractical woodwork, as well as with the more sober fare. Folks could imagine this stuff in their homes. It was the wood and the craftsmanship that they liked. If the artist chose to go off in some weird direction, he was allowed, and his efforts were applauded. Here are some of the pieces that played so well in Waterloo.



'Made of Wood,' at the Waterloo Recreation and Arts Center last fall, included gizmos and sculpture as well as furniture. The largest piece in the show (that whiskered form in the back center) was a magazine and newspaper rack by Ed Dadey, of Marquette, Neb.



From Racine, Wis. . . .

"Cosmic Comic Book Kid Chair," left, and "Amos's Bar and Grill—Cowboy Chair" are two of a whole population David Holmes is creating, in which people are chairs. They are assembled like miniature architectural structures, the cowboy with paneling and molding, the space man with rivets and rubber rings. Instead of building an environment for each, Holmes includes an appropriate diorama inside the torso. Thus these guys are at home anywhere, carrying with them the scenes of their exploits.

From Minneapolis, Minn. . . .

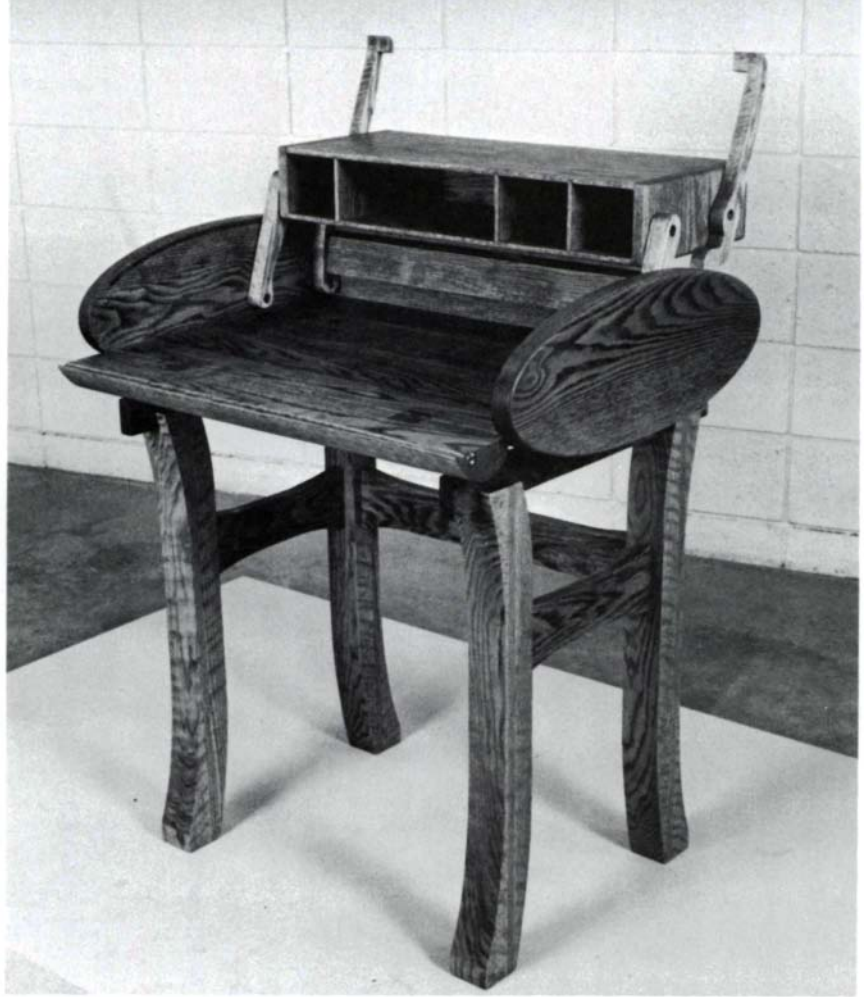
Randy Harmes makes boxes and cabinets that draw you inside. When you peek through the cross in the armor of his smugly contemplative "St. George," photo right, you see the gleaming red eye of a forlorn green dragon. When you open the bulging, coopered coat of the wall-hung military man (entitled "You Are What You Eat"), you discover the hanging head of a slaughtered pig. And in "Hatbox," he depicts himself, as if making containers were his predicament. When you lift the brim of the hat to peer inside, you find yourself peering back from the mirror that lines the bottom.



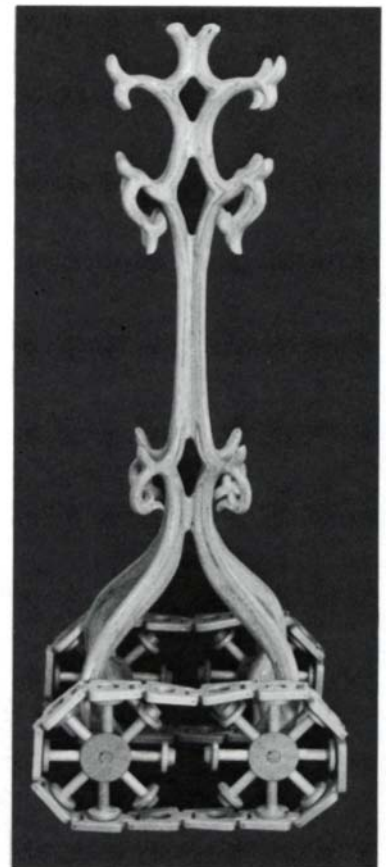
From Mt. Horeb, Wis. . . .



Bruce Erdman is widely known through craft fairs and shops for his tambour boxes. Here he works this theme large, in a pigeonhole desk of white oak. The desk was the most handled piece in the show. No wonder, the way the writing unit, compact and self-contained when closed, glides easily open and swings up and out for use.

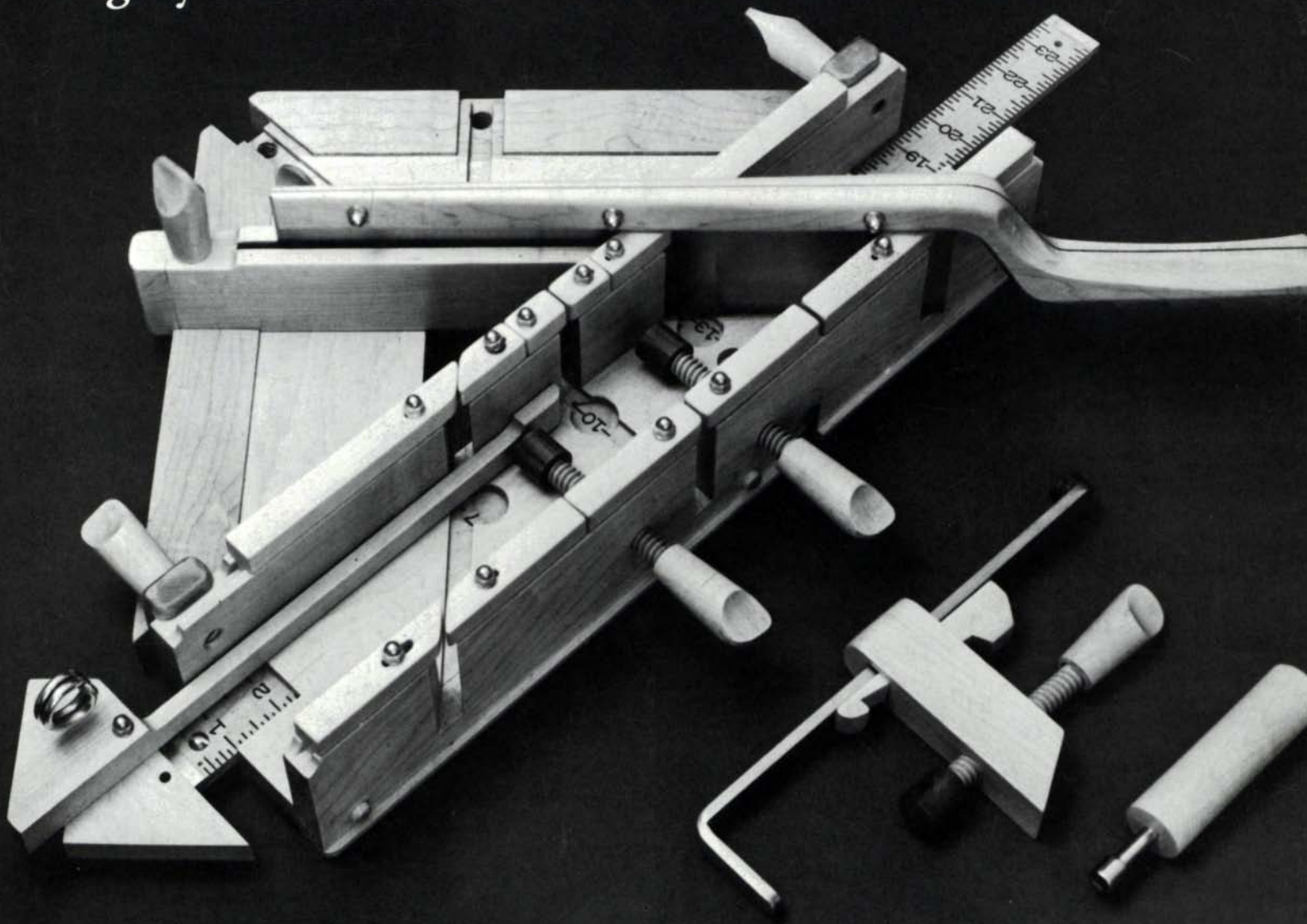


From Marquette, Neb.
and St. Paul, Minn. . . .



Two coat racks test unusual forms for a mundane function. Ed Dadey laminated maple in the shape of the Gateway Arch in St. Louis for a taut, pleasantly springy hanger holder, left. The convoluted tractor tree by Dean Wilson is of birch and birch plywood. □

Mighty Fine Miter Box



The metal tools we can so easily buy make us forget the potential of wood as a material for making tools. I made this miter box with wooden parts designed to last or be easily replaced, and it cuts smoothly and accurately. Wooden screws in the front fence secure the work, and a clamp holds the box to the bench. I made the saw by removing the handle and back from a Millers Falls backsaw and replacing them with a one-piece back/handle. I find that positioning the handle directly in line with the sawteeth gives better control, especially in small moldings. A sliding rule with a swiveling end-stop provides the measurement accuracy for repeat cuts. The length of the cut can be read in the circular window in the base of the box.

The tool is non-self-destructive because the sawteeth never touch the box. The saw is sandwiched at the top of the fences by guides that adjust the plane of cut both vertically and laterally; they also stop the saw from cutting into the bottom of the box. You tend to take exceptional care of tools you make yourself, so this box should work accurately for as long as I need it.

—John Marcoux, Providence, R.I.

